ŠKODA

ŠKODA Roomster Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index
The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- ■ Denotes the end of a section.
- ▶ Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.
You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (Hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

On-board literature
The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**owner's manual**" as well as a "**service schedule**" and the "**Help on the road**" brochure.

Depending on the vehicle model and equipment, other additional operating manuals and instructions may be provided (e.g. an operating manual for the radio).

If one of the documents listed above is missing, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" - a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA service partner" - a company that is contractually authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to carry out service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA Partners" - a company that is authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to sell ŠKODA products or carry out service work, or to carry out these tasks in parallel

The owner's manual
This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle does **not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this owner's manual.

The scope of equipment in your vehicle relates to your sales contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner where you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** may differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended as general information.

The service schedule:
- Contains vehicle data including information on service work carried out;
- Is intended as proof of services carried out;
- Is intended for records relating to the mobility warranty (only valid for some countries);
- Serves as a warranty certificate from the ŠKODA Partner where your vehicle was purchased.

Therefore please always present the service schedule when you take your vehicle to a specialist garage.

If the service schedule is missing or in poor condition, please contact the specialist garage that regularly services your vehicle. You will need to request a duplicate, in which the specialist garage will confirm the service work previously carried out.

The Help on the road brochure
The Help on the road brochure contains the most important emergency telephone numbers as well as telephone numbers and contact addresses of ŠKODA Partners in the various different countries.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Using the system

Cockpit 7
Overview 6

Instruments and Indicator Lights 8
Instrument cluster 8
Multifunction display (onboard computer) 11
MAXI DOT (information display) 15
Warning lights 17

Unlocking and locking 25
Unlocking and locking 25
Central locking system 28
Remote control 31
Anti-theft alarm system 32
Luggage compartment lid 34
Electrical power windows 35

Lights and visibility 38
Lights 38
Interior lights 43
Visibility 44
Windscreen wipers and washers 45
Rear window 48

Seats and stowing 50
Front seats 50
Head restraints 52
Rear seats 52
Boot 55
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 59
Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment 61
Roof rack system 63
Useful equipment 63
Storage compartments 66
Praktik 71

Heating and air-conditioning 75
Heating, ventilation, cooling 75
Heating 76
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system) 78
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system) 81

Communication and multimedia 84
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II 84
Voice control 89
Multimedia 90

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 93
Starting and stopping the engine 93
Braking 96
Manual gear changing and pedals 97
Automatic gearbox 98
Running in 102
Economical driving and environmental sustainability 103
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 107
Driving abroad 108

Assist systems 110
Brake assist systems 110
Parking aid 112
Cruise Control System 113
START/STOP 114

Towing a trailer 117
Towing device 117
Trailer 120

Safety

Passive Safety 123
General information 123
Correct seated position 124

Seat belts 127
Using seat belts 127
Inertia reels and belt tensioners 130

Airbag system 132
Description of the airbag system 132
Airbag overview 133
Deactivating airbags 136

Transporting children safely 139
Child seat 139
Fastening systems 141

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle 144
Washing your car 144
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 145
Taking care of the interior 149
Modifications, repairs and technical alterations 151

Inspecting and replenishing 154
Fuel 154
Engine compartment 156
Engine oil 159
Coolant 162
Brake fluid 163
Vehicle battery 164

Wheels 169
Tyres and wheel rims 169
Winter operation 175

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 176
Emergency equipment 176
Changing a wheel 177
Tyre repair 181
Jump-starting 183
Towing the vehicle 184

Fuses and light bulbs 187
Fuses 187
Bulbs 190

Technical data

Technical data 195
Vehicle data 195

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AG	Automatic gearbox
TCS	Traction control
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

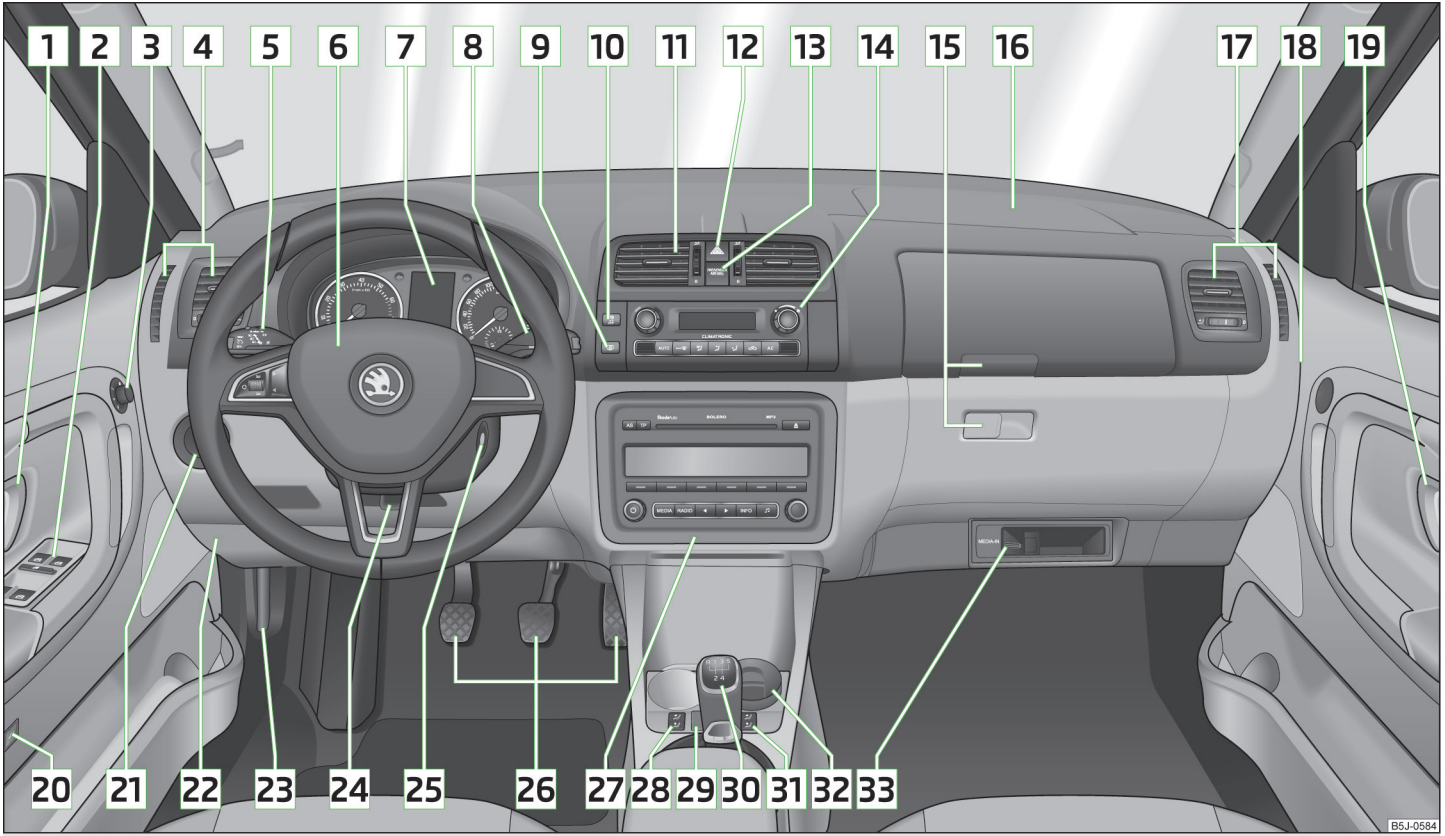

Fig. 1 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Door opening lever on the driver's side — 27
2 Electrical power windows — 35
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 48
4 Air outlet vents on the driver's side — 75
5 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 40
› Speed regulating system — 113
6 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 134
› With pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone — 84
7 Instrument cluster: Instruments and warning lights — 8
8 Operating lever:
› Multifunction display — 11
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 46
9 Switch for rear window heater — 44
10 TCS switch — 111
11 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 75
12 Switch for hazard warning lights — 42
13 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 137
14 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the heating — 76
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 78
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 81
15 Storage compartments on the front passenger side — 67
16 Front passenger airbag — 134
17 Air outlet vents on the front passenger side — 75
18 Key-operated switch for the front seat passenger airbag — 137
19 Door opening lever on the front passenger side — 27
20 Switch depending on equipment fitted:
› Boot lid remote release — 34
› Interior monitor — 33
21 Light switch and headlamp beam adjustment — 38, 39
22 Fuse box in the dashboard — 188
23 Bonnet release lever — 158
24 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 94
25 Ignition lock — 95
26 Pedals — 98
27 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
28 Rocker switch for front left seat heating — 51
29 Central locking system — 30
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gear shift lever (manual gearbox) — 97
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 99
31 Rocker switch for front right seat heating — 51
32 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Ashtrays — 64
› Storage compartment — 69
33 MDI — 91

Note

The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 8
Engine revolutions counter 9
Speedometer 9
Coolant temperature gauge display 9
Fuel gauge 9
Counter for distance driven 10
Service Interval Display 10
Digital clock 11
Recommended gear 11

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

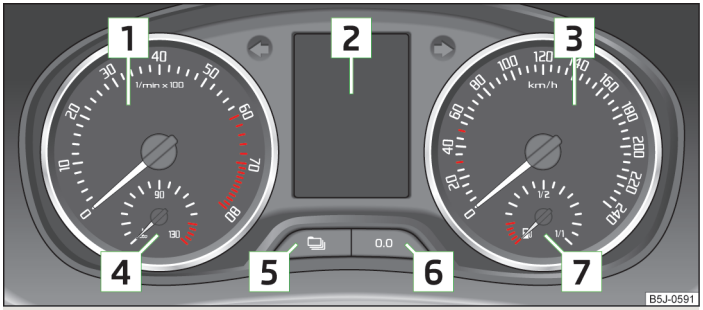

Fig. 2 **Instrument cluster**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 9
2 Display:
- With counter for distance driven » page 10
- With service interval display » page 10
- With digital clock » page 11
- With multifunction display » page 11
- With information display » page 15

3 Speedometer » page 9
4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 9
5 Button for display mode:
- Set hours/minutes
- Activating/deactivating the second speed in mph or km/h
- Service interval - Display of the number of days, kilometres or miles remaining until the next Inspection Service [1]

[1] Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.

6 Button for:
- Reset trip counter for the distance driven
- Set hours/minutes
- Activate/deactivate display mode

7 Fuel gauge » page 9

Engine revolutions counter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The red scale of the rev counter 1 » Fig. 2 on page 8 indicates the range in which the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or move the selector lever into position D if your car is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

To maintain the optimum motor speed, observe the gearshift indicator » page 11.

For the sake of the environment

Shifting to a higher gear in good time helps to lower fuel consumption, minimises operating noise levels, protects the environment and contributes to a longer life and reliability of the engine.

Speedometer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

Warning against excessive speeds
An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below this speed limit.

Note

This function is only valid for some countries.

Coolant temperature gauge display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The coolant temperature gauge 4 » Fig. 2 on page 8 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

The following guidelines regarding the temperature ranges must be observed to avoid any damage to the engine.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale, for a normal style of driving. The pointer may also move further to the right at high engine loads and high outside temperatures.

CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the fresh air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant. There is then a risk of the engine overheating at high outside temperatures and high engine loads » page 19.

Fuel gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The fuel gauge 7 » Fig. 2 on page 8 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres. The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking » page 23.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! An irregular supply of fuel can lead to irregular engine running. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Note

On some vehicles, the fuel gauge is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Counter for distance driven

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in kilometres (km). In some countries the measuring unit "mile" is used.

Daily trip counter (trip)
The daily trip counter indicates the distance which you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

To reset the display of the daily trip counter, press button 6 » Fig. 2 on page 8 for longer.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance in kilometres or miles which the vehicle has been driven.

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster Error will appear continuously in the display. Ensure that the fault is rectified as soon as possible by a specialist workshop.

Note

For vehicles fitted with the information display, if the display of the second speed is activated in mph or km/h, this driving speed is indicated instead of the counter for the total distance driven.

Service Interval Display

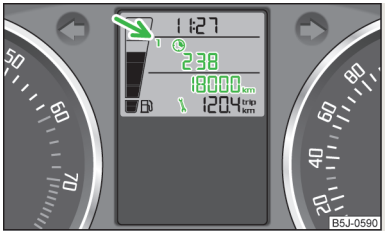

Fig. 3
Service Interval Display: Note

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The display can vary depending on the equipment.

Before the next service interval is reached, a key symbol and the kilometres and days remaining until the next service is due are shown for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on» Fig. 3 .

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Oil change service
An **oil change service** is due if the display shows the number **1** at the point marked by the arrow » Fig. 3.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil change in ... km or ... days.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, a flashing key symbol and the text **OIL CHNG** appears in the display for around 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil change now!

Inspection
An **Inspection** is due if the display shows the number **2** at the point marked by the arrow » Fig. 3.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Inspection in ... km or ... days.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, a flashing key symbol and the text **INSPEC_** appears in the display for around 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Inspection now!

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can use the button 5 to display the remaining distance and days until the next service interval » Fig. 2 on page 8.

A key symbol and the remaining distance appear in the display for 10 seconds. At the same time, the days remaining until the next service interval are displayed.

In vehicles equipped with the information display, you can call up this display in the **Settings** menu » page 15.

The following will appear together in the information display for about 10 seconds:

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- For more information on the service intervals, see » *service schedule*, chapter *service intervals*.

Digital clock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The clock is set with the buttons 5 and 6 » Fig. 2 on page 8.

Select the display that you wish to change with the button 5 and carry out the change with the button 6.

It is also possible to set the clock in the **Time** menu on vehicles that are fitted with the information display » page 15.

Recommended gear

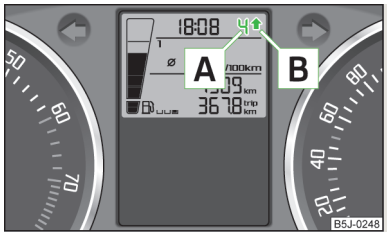

Fig. 4
Recommended gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The currently engaged gear A is shown in the instrument cluster display » Fig. 4.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

If the control unit recognises that it is beneficial to change gear, an arrow B is shown in the display. The arrow points up or down, depending on whether you should shift into a higher or lower gear.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the recommended gear is displayed immediately instead of the gear selected A.

CAUTION

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Multifunction display (onboard computer)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory 12
Operation 13

Multifunction display details 13
Warning against excessive speeds 14

The multifunction display can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

The multi-functional indicator appears in the display » Fig. 5 on page 12 or in the information display » page 15 depending on the equipment fitted to your vehicle.

In vehicles with an information display » page 15, there is an option to fade out some of the information.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface – warning, drive with care!

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.

Memory

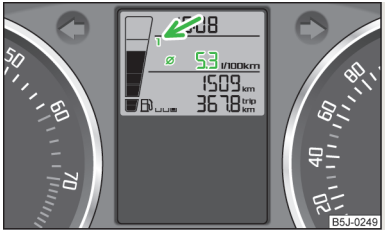

Fig. 5
Multifunction display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 11.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is shown in the Display » Fig. 5.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switching over the memory takes place with the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 on the windshield wiper lever.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)
The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)
The total-trip memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes driving or 1 999 kilometres driven, and on vehicles which are fitted with an information display up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9 999 kilometres driven. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.

Operation

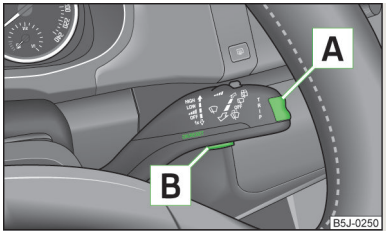

Fig. 6
Multifunction display: Control elements

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 11.

The rocker switch A » Fig. 6 and the button B are located on the windscreen wiper lever.

Select memory
› Press the button B » Fig. 6.

Selecting functions
› Briefly press the rocker switch A » Fig. 6 up or down. This opens the individual functions of the multifunction display one after the other.

Reseting
› Select the desired memory.
› Press the button B » Fig. 6 for longer.

The following readouts of the selected memory will be set to zero by button B:
› Average fuel consumption
› Distance driven
› Average speed
› Driving time

Multifunction display details

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 11.

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outdoor temperature is below +4 °C, the temperature display appears with the snowflake symbol (ice warning).

This display flashes for a few seconds, then shows the most recently displayed function[1] .

If the temperature drops below +4 °C while the car is driving at a speed faster than 10 km / h, a beep is also heard.

Driving time
The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display. If you want to measure the driving time from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 to zero.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with an information display, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km[2]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[3].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km[2] » page 12.

[1] Does not apply to the Information Display.
[2] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.
[3] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --,- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero using the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13. After erasing the memory, no value appears in the display until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. Once the fuel gauge pointer reaches the reserve marking, the range is displayed in 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), the fuel consumption of 10 ltr./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is adapted accordingly to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is shown in the display » page 12. If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 to zero.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km or 9 999 km on vehicles with an information display. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour » page 12. To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement using button B » Fig. 6 on page 13.

After erasing the memory, no value appears in the display until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current speed
The current speed which is identical to the display of the speedometer 3 » Fig. 2 on page 8 is indicated on the display.

Oil temperature
If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, only - -.- is displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 11.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the **Speed warn.** menu item with button A » Fig. 6 on page 13.
› Press the button B to activate the ability to set the speed limit (value flashes).
› Use the button A to adjust the required speed limit, e.g. to 50 km/h.
› Confirm the speed limit that was set with button B, or wait approx. 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the **Speed warn.** menu item with button A » Fig. 6 on page 13.
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Press button B to accept the current speed as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to change the set speed limit, it is changed in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Confirm the speed limit that was set by pressing button B again, or wait approx. 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

Change or delete speed limit
› Select the **Speed warn.** menu item with button A » Fig. 6 on page 13.
› Pressing the button B deletes the speed limit.
› Pressing the button B activates the ability to change the speed limit.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The **Speed warning** message appears in the display with the speed limit set at the same time.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

MAXI DOT (information display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 15
Settings 15
Door, boot lid and bonnet warning 16
Auto Check Control 16

The information display provides you with information on the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the radio, mobile phone, multi-functional indicator, navigation system, the unit connected to the MDI input and the automatic gearbox » page 98.

Lighting up of certain symbols is combined with an acoustic warning signal.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

Main menu

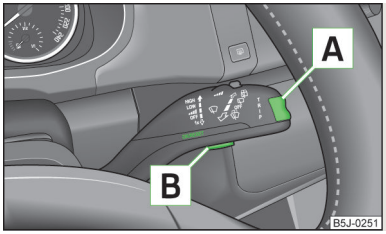

Fig. 7
Operating lever: Information display use

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

› Activate the **MAIN MENU** by pressing and holding rocker switch A » Fig. 7.

› Individual menu items can be selected by means of the rocker switch A. When the pushbutton B is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **MFD** » page 11
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 84;
- **Vehicle status** » page 16
- **Settings** » page 15

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

Note

If the information display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after 10 seconds.

Settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

You can change certain settings by means of the information display. The current setting is shown on the information display in the respective menu at the top below the line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **Language**
- **MFD displays**
- **Time**
- **Winter tyres**
- **Units of measurement**
- **Alt. speed dis.**
- **Service**
- **Factory setting**
- **Back**

Select the **Back** menu item to return to one level higher in the menu.

Language
You can set the language for the warning and information texts here.

MFD displays
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, you can set the speed at which an audible signal should sound. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

When exceeding the speed, the following is shown on the information display:

Winter tyres: maximum ... km / h

Units of measurement
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Second speed
The display of the second speed in mph or in km/h can be switched on here[1].

Service
Here you can have the remaining kilometres and days until the next service interval displayed, and reset the Service Interval Display.

Factory setting
The information display is returned to its factory settings by selecting the **Factory Setting** menu item.

Door, boot lid and bonnet warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is open, the information display indicates the relevant **open** door or boot/bonnet.

An audible signal also sounds if the vehicle is travelling at more than 6 km/h.

Auto Check Control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the information display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the symbols in the information display or the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 17.

The **Vehicle status** menu item is displayed in the menu if there is at least one error message. After selecting this menu the first of the error messages is displayed. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning symbols

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 19
	Clutches of the automatic gearbox are too hot	» page 16
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	» page 19

Clutches of the automatic gearbox are too hot
A symbol in the information display indicates that the temperature of the clutches of the automatic gearbox is too high.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the symbol disappears - risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

[1] Valid for countries where the values are indicated in British measuring units.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 42.

Note

▪ If warning messages are shown in the information display, you need to confirm these messages with the button B » Fig. 7 on page 15 in order to call up the main menu.
▪ As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 17
Braking system 18
Seat belt warning light 18
Generator 18
Open door 18
Engine oil 19
Coolant temperature, coolant level 19
Electro-hydraulic power steering 20
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 20
Traction Control System (ASR) 20
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 21
Rear fog lights 21
Bulb failure 21
Exhaust inspection system 21
Pre-glow plug system (diesel engine) 22
EPC fault light (petrol engine) 22
Diesel particle filter (diesel engine) 22
Fuel reserve 23
Airbag system 23
Tyre pressure 23
Windscreen washer fluid level 23
Traction control (ASR) switched off 24
Turn signal system 24
Low beam 24
Fog lights 24
Cruise control system 24
Selector lever lock 24
Main beam 24

The warning lights show certain functions/faults and may be accompanied by audible signals.

WARNING

▪ If illuminated warning lights and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes are not observed, this may result in severe injuries or major vehicle damage.
▪ The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is essential to observe safety notes » page 156, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light (P) comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Release parking brake!

Braking system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light illuminates if the brake fluid level is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 164.

Further information » page 96, *Braking*.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 42.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 156, *Engine compartment*.
- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light » page 21, *Anti-lock brake system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance!

Seat belt warning light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver to fasten the seat belt. The warning light only goes out if the driver has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and simultaneously the warning light flashes.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

Further information » page 127.

Generator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

If the warning light lights up when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek help from a specialist garage. The electrical system requires checking.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system » page 42.

CAUTION

If the warning light (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the warning light when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage!

Open door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on if one or several doors are opened or if the boot lid is opened.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, park the vehicle at a safe distance from traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system » page 42.

Engine oil

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light lights up red (low oil pressure)
The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil pressure: Owner's manual!

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on[1].

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 161.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The warning light lights up yellow (oil quantity too low)
The following is displayed in the information display:

Check oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 161.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes yellow (engine oil level sensor faulty)
The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil sensor workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light flashes several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 42.

CAUTION

The red oil pressure light is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refuelling stop.

Coolant temperature, coolant level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The indicator light lights up until the engine reaches operating temperature[2]. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the warning light lights up or flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

An audible signal sounds as a warning tone.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Check coolant! Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the level of the coolant » page 163, and refill the coolant if necessary » page 163.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the radiator fan. Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 189, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Do not continue driving if the warning light **does not go off even though the coolant level is correct and the fuse for the fan is in working order!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

[1] The warning light on vehicles fitted with an information display does not come on after switching the ignition on, but only if a fault exists or the engine oil level is too low.
[2] Not valid for vehicles with information display.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 42.
- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Electro-hydraulic power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light after switching on the ignition or when driving lights up continuously, a fault exists in the electrohydraulic power steering. The power steering operates with reduced steering assist or does not function at all.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 94.

Note

- If the yellow warning light goes out after starting the engine again and driving a short distance, it is not necessary to visit a specialist garage.
- If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.
- There is no power-assisted steering support when the vehicle is being towed without the engine running or when the power-assisted steering is defect. The vehicle is fully steerable however. There is however increased force required to turn the steering wheel.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light flashes to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light comes on immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The ESC cannot be switched off, the button » page 111 only deactivates the TCS system and the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up.

As the ESC operates in conjunction with the ABS, the ESP indicator light will also come on if the ABS system fails.

Further information » page 110, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

Traction Control System (ASR)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light flashes to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ASR can be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: Traction control (TCS)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The fact that the TCS system operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

Further information » page 111, *Traction Control System (ASR)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 17.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 42.
- If the warning light » page 18 is displayed simultaneously with the ABS warning light , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Rear fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 17.

The warning light comes on when the rear fog lights are operating » page 41.

Bulb failure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 17.

The warning light comes on if a bulb is faulty:
› within 2 seconds of the ignition being switched on;
› when switching on the defective light bulb.

The following is displayed in the information display:

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Note

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting have several light bulbs. The indicator light only lights up if all light bulbs of the licence plate lighting or the parking light (in one rear light) are defective. For this reason, regular check that these light bulbs are working correctly.

Exhaust inspection system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 17.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Pre-glow plug system (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. The engine can be started immediately after the pre-glow warning light goes out.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC fault light (petrol engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

If the warning light EPC comes on or begins to flash while driving, a fault exists in the engine control unit. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning light lights up, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

In order to clean the diesel particulate filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, the vehicle should be driven at an even speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of 1 800 - 2 500 rpm for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out with the 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S).

The warning light only goes out after the diesel particulate filter has been successfully cleaned.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Diesel particle filter: Owner's manual!

The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also lights up.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials - risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

As long as the warning light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles, we recommend that regularly driving over short distances should be avoided.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Service Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The indicator light will come on if the fuel level is less than 7 litres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Please refuel. Range: km

Note

The text in the information display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: Airbag

The functionality of the airbag system is also monitored electronically when one airbag has been switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

› The warning light lights up for 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for 12 seconds afterwards in 2 second intervals.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the airbag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:

› The warning light comes on for 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

› switching off the airbag is indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the lighting up of the yellow indicator light in display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** » page 137.

WARNING

If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

Tyre pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the system.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 174, *Tyre pressure monitor*.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected, the warning light illuminates after the ignition is switched on. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

Windscreen washer fluid level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light comes on. Top up with liquid » page 159.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Top up wash fluid!

Traction control (ASR) switched off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The ASR is switched off by pressing the button » page 111 and the warning light illuminates.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Traction control (ASR) deactivated.

Turn signal system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

Either the left or right warning light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If a turn signal light fails, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » page 40, *Turn signal and main beam light*.

Low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on when low beam is selected » page 38.

Fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on when the fog lights are operating » page 41.

Cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on when the cruise control is operating » page 113.

Selector lever lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

If the warning light lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary, to be able to move the selector lever from position **P** or **N** » page 101.

Main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 17.

The warning light comes on when the main beam or headlight flasher are selected » page 40.

Unlocking and locking

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key 25
Replacing the battery in the remote control key 26
Child safety lock 26
Opening/closing a door 27
Locking/unlocking the vehicle without central locking 27
Emergency locking of the doors 28

Vehicle key

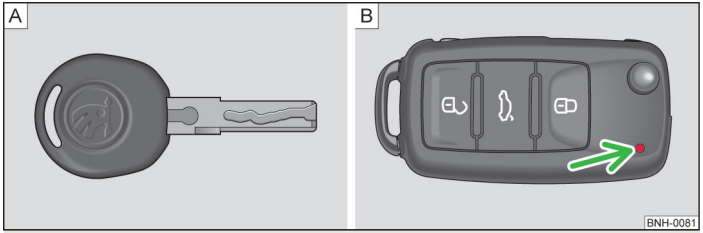

Fig. 8 **Key without remote control/key with remote control (remote control key)**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 25.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle can be equipped with keys without radio remote control » Fig. 8 - A or with radio remote control» Fig. 8 - B.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle - even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking does react to the remote control at less than around 3 metres away » page 26.

Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

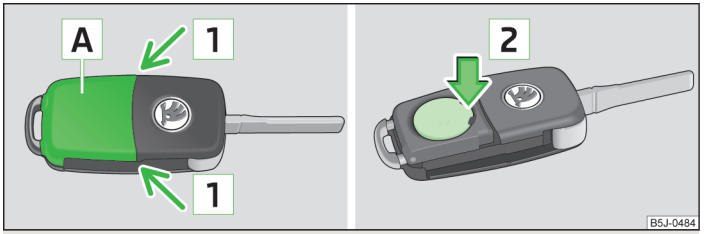

Fig. 9 **Remote control key: Remove cover/remove battery**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 25.

Each remote control key contains a battery that is located under the cover A » Fig. 9. The battery needs replacing if red warning light » Fig. 8 on page 25 - B does not go on when you press a button on the remote control key. We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of arrows 1 » Fig. 9.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery downwards in the region of arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is shown on the battery cover.
› Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Note

- The system has to be synchronised, if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 32.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Child safety lock

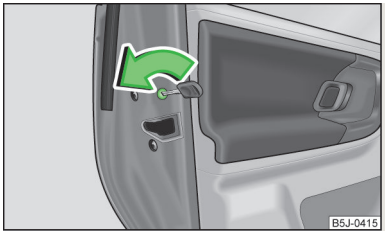

Fig. 10
Child safety locks on the rear doors

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 25.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on
› Use the vehicle key to turn the slit in the rear door in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 10.

Switching off
› Use the vehicle key to turn the slit to the right in the opposite direction to the arrow.

Opening/closing a door

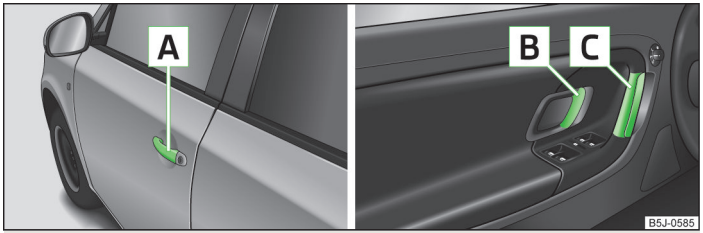

Fig. 11 **Door handle/door opening lever:**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 25.

Opening from the outside
› Unlock the vehicle and pull on door handle A » Fig. 11 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door opening lever B on the door you wish to open.

By the first pull on the opening lever, the door is **unlocked**.

By the second pull on the opening lever, the door is **opened**.

Closing from the inside
› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle without central locking

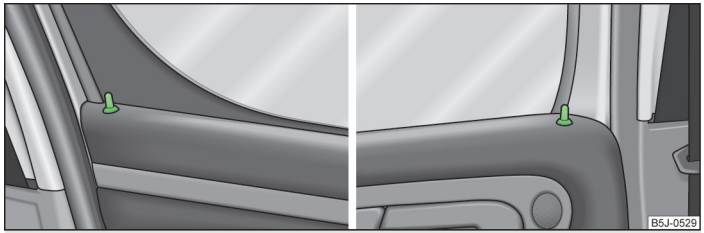

Fig. 12 **Securing knob in the front door/rear door**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 25.

When you unlock/lock the door, the respective securing knob » Fig. 12 will move upwards or downwards.

Unlocking from the outside
› Unlock the front door with the key » page 30.

Unlocking from the inside
› Pull on the door opening lever.

Locking from the outside
› Lock the front door with the key » page 30.

Locking from the inside
› Push the securing knob down » Fig. 12.

WARNING

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. They do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note

- Lock the opened rear doors and front passenger door by closing them and pressing the securing knob.
- It is not possible to lock the opened driver's door using the securing knob. This prevents against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle.

Emergency locking of the doors

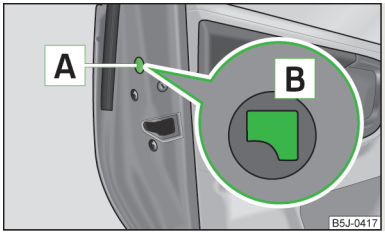

Fig. 13
Rear door: Emergency locking of the door

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 25.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the end face of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after the door is opened.

Locking

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 13.
› Insert the key into the opening under the panel and press the stopping lever B as far as the stop toward the inside.
› Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be unlocked from the inside by pulling on the door handle again, and then opened from the outside.

Central locking system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual settings 29
Safe securing system 29
Unlocking the vehicle using the key 30
Locking the vehicle with the key 30
Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside 30

When using central locking or unlocking, **all** doors are locked or unlocked simultaneously. The boot lid is unlocked when opening. It can be opened by pressing the handle above the licence plate » page 34, *Opening/closing*.

Warning light in the driver's door

After locking the vehicle, the warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system » page 29 is not operating, the warning light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash evenly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the indicator light first flashes fast for about 2 seconds, then lights up for about 30 seconds continuously and then flashes slowly, there is a fault in the central locking system or in the interior monitor and in the towing protection » page 33. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Convenience operation of windows

The windows can be opened and closed when unlocking and locking the vehicle » page 37.

WARNING

- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.
- The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked. Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

CAUTION

If the safe securing system is activated» page 29, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- In case of failure of the central locking system, you can only lock and unlock the driver's door with the key. The other doors and the tailgate can be manually locked or unlocked.
  - Emergency locking of the door » page 28.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 35.

Individual settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

Opening a single door
This selection function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated.

Automatic locking and unlocking
All the doors and the boot lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button » page 30.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling on the opening lever of the respective door. By the first pull on the opening lever, the door is **unlocked**. By the second pull on the opening lever, the door is **opened**.

Note

You can have the custom settings activated by a specialist garage, if you wish.

Safe securing system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing system**. The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent for attempts to break into your vehicle.

The safe securing system can be deactivated within 2 seconds by double locking the vehicle.

If the safe securing system is not operating, the warning light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash evenly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

The safe securing system is activated again the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated, the door can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling on the opening lever of the respective door. By the first pull on the opening lever, the door is **unlocked**. By the second pull on the opening lever, the door is **opened**.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then no longer possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note

- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.
- You will be informed that the safe securing system is activated after the vehicle is locked by the **CHECK DEADLOCK** message on the instrument cluster display. The Check deadlock! message **will appear on vehicles that are equipped with an information display. Owner's manual!**

Unlocking the vehicle using the key

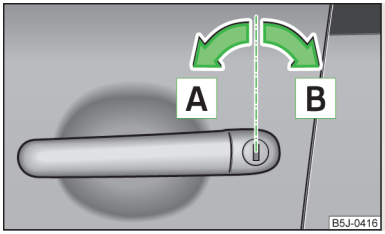

Fig. 14
Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of travel (unlocking position) A » Fig. 14.
› Pull the door handle and open the door.

› All the doors (only the driver's door on vehicles with anti-theft alarm system) are unlocked.
› The boot lid is then unlocked.
› The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
› The safe securing system is deactivated.
› The windows open while the key **is held** in the unlock position.
› The warning light in the driver door stops flashing if the car is not fitted with an anti-theft alarm system » page 32.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you must insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

Locking the vehicle with the key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the opposite direction of travel (lock position) B » Fig. 14 on page 30.

› All the doors and the boot lid are locked.
› The switched on interior lights will switch off over the door contact.
› The windows close while the key **is held** in the lock position.
› The safe securing system is immediately activated.
› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.

Note

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside

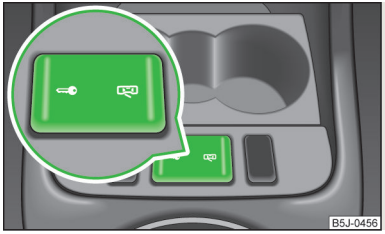

Fig. 15
Centre console: Central locking button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock and lock it with the rocker switch » Fig. 15 without the ignition switched on.

Locking all doors and the boot lid
› Press the button in the area » Fig. 15. The symbol in the button comes on.

Unlocking all doors and the boot lid
› Press the button in the area » Fig. 15. The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

› It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling on the opening lever of the respective door. By the first pull on the opening lever, the door is **unlocked**. By the second pull on the opening lever, the door is **opened**.
› If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking 31
Synchronization 32

You can use the remote control key to:
› unlock and lock the vehicle,
› unlocking boot lid;
› open and close the windows » page 37, *Window convenience operation*.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or replaced, the system must be initialised by a specialist garage. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

Note

▪ The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
▪ The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
▪ The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away » page 26.
▪ If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking

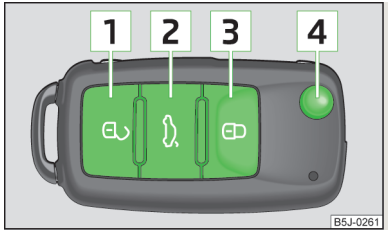

Fig. 16
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 31.

Unlocking the vehicle
› Press the button 1 » Fig. 16.

Locking the vehicle
› Press the button 3 » Fig. 16.

Deactivating the safe securing system
› Press the button 3 » Fig. 16 twice within 2 seconds. Further information » page 28.

Unlocking the boot lid
› Press the button 2 » Fig. 16. Further information » page 34.

Folding out the key bit
› Press the button 4 » Fig. 16.

Folding in the key bit
› Press the button 4 » Fig. 16 and fold in the key bit.

Unlocking
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button 1 » Fig. 16 and none of the doors or the boot lid are opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system is reactivated. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

In addition, when the car is unlocked, the electrically adjustable seats and exterior mirrors move into the position assigned to this key. The stored setting of driver seat and exterior mirrors is retrieved.

Locking
The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note

Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.

Synchronization

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 31.

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked by actuating the remote control system then it is possible that the code in the key and the control unit in the vehicle are no longer synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the radio-operated key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery on the remote control was replaced.

This means it is necessary to synchronise the code as follows:
› press any button on the remote control key;
› pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 33
Interior monitor and towing protection 33

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

Note

- The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.
- Before leaving the vehicle, check that all the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the anti-theft alarm system is fully operational.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receiver unit precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles.

Operation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 32.

How is the alarm system activated?
The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked with the radio remote control or the key in the driver's door . It is activated 30 seconds after locking the door.

How is the alarm system deactivated?
The alarm system is deactivated by pressing the unlock button on the radio remote control. The anti-theft alarm system is reactivated if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after transmitting the radio signal.

If the vehicle is unlocked by inserting the key into the driver door, the key must be inserted into the ignition lock and the ignition switched on within 15 seconds of unlocking the door to deactivate the alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:
› bonnet;
› boot lid;
› doors;
› ignition lock;
› Vehicle inclination » page 33;
› Interior of the vehicle » page 33;
› A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply;
› Socket of the factory-fitted towing device.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

How is the alarm switched off?
The alarm is turned off by pressing the key symbol on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection

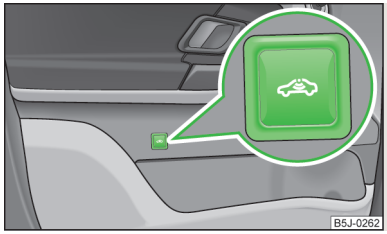

Fig. 17
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 32.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the » Fig. 17 button in the driver's door.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are switched on again automatically the next time the car is locked.

Note

▪ Switch off the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements from (e.g. children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.
▪ The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing 34
Automatic locking 34
Emergency unlocking 35

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the tailgate might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving if it was locked – risk of an accident.
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack - risk of injury!

Note

- **After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 1 second and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.** This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function of the handle is activated again when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Opening/closing

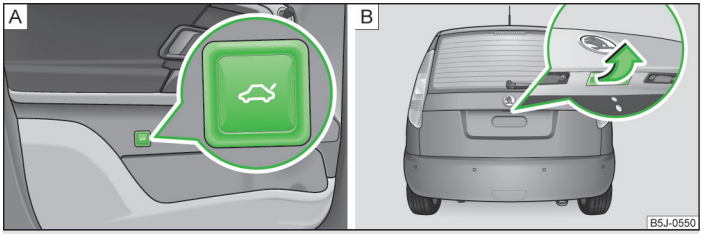

Fig. 18 **Unlock the boot lid/boot lid handle**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 34.

After unlocking the vehicle, you can open the lid by pushing the handle located above the licence plate.

Opening the boot lid for vehicles without central locking

› Press the button in the driver's door » Fig. 18 - A and lift the tailgate in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 18 - B.

Opening the boot lid for vehicles with central locking

› Push the handle and lift the boot lid in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 18 - B.

Closing

› Pull down the boot lid and close it with a slight swing.

A handle which makes the closing easier is located on the inner panelling of the boot lid.

Automatic locking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 34.

If the vehicle was locked before the tailgate was closed, the lid is locked automatically immediately it is closed.

The period after which the tailgate locks automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Delayed locking
It is possible to open the tailgate within a limited period of it being closed if the tailgate was locked with the button on the remote control key.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. You should therefore always lock the vehicle using the button on the remote control or with the key if no remote control is available » page 30.

Delayed locking can be disabled by a specialist garage at any time.

Note

More detailed information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Emergency unlocking

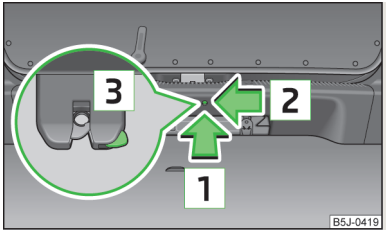

Fig. 19
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 34.

The boot lid can be unlocked manually if there is a fault in the central locking system.

Unlocking
› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 52.
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 19 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lock 3 under the trim in the direction of arrow 2.
› Open the boot lid.

Electrical power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the windows 36
Power window force limiter 36
Window convenience operation 37
Operational faults 37

WARNING

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, do not leave anybody in the vehicle as it is not possible to open the windows from the inside in the event of an emergency.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 36. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrical power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) S » Fig. 20 on page 36 when children are being transported on the rear seats.
- When closing the windows, proceed with caution so as to avoid causing crushing injuries - risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- If the windows are frozen, first of all remove the ice » page 147, *Windows and exterior mirrors*. Only then can the electrical power windows be operated, as otherwise the window seal and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice on the window may cause greater resistance as the window is closed. The window will stop and open again by several centimetres.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

▪ After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. The electrical power windows are only switched off completely once the driver's door or front passenger door are opened.
▪ When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Opening/closing the windows

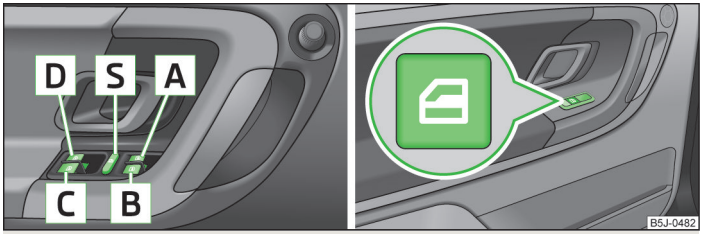

Fig. 20 **Buttons on the driver's door/in the rear doors**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

Opening
› The window is opened by pressing lightly on the corresponding button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also open fully automatically if you briefly press the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing
› The window is closed by pulling lightly on the corresponding upper edge of the button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also close fully automatically if you briefly pull the button as far as the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Buttons for the power windows » Fig. 20.
A Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
B Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
C Button for electrical power window of the rear right door
D Button for electrical power window of the rear left door
S Safety pushbutton

Safety pushbutton
The buttons for electrical power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety pushbutton S » Fig. 20. The buttons for the electrical power windows in rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch S lights up.

Note

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Power window force limiter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The electrical power windows can be opened and closed as follows when unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Opening

› Press and hold the key symbol on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.

Closing

› Press and hold the key symbol on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.

You can interrupt the opening or closing process for the windows immediately by releasing the key or the lock button.

Operational faults

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

Electrical power windows do not operate

If the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected while the window was opened, the electrical power windows will not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:

› switch on the ignition;
› pull the top edge of the button in the driver's door to close the window;
› release the button;
› pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds.

Operation in winter

In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.

It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 36.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching lights on and off 38
Headlight beam adjustment 39
Function DAY LIGHT (daytime running lights) 39
Turn signal and main beam light 40
Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function 40
Fog lights 41
Foglights with the CORNER function 41
Rear fog light 41
Tourist lights 41
Hazard warning light system 42
Parking lights 42

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in » Fig. 21 on page 38. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical, however.

WARNING

- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.
- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

Note

In the event of cool or humid weather conditions, the headlights can be misted up from inside. The temperature difference between interior and external area of the headlight lenses is decisive. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. It also concerns reverse light and turn signal lights. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Switching lights on and off

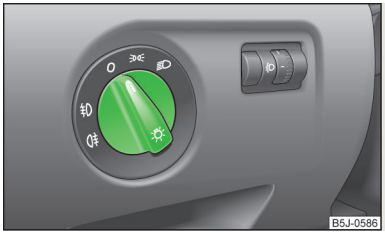

Fig. 21
Dash panel: Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Switching on the parking light
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 21 to position ⇶.

Switching on the low beam and main beam
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 21 to position ≡D.
› Push the lever forwards to switch on the main beam » Fig. 23 on page 40.

Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 21 to position 0.

CAUTION

An audible warning signal will sound if the light switch is in the ≡D or ⇶ position, the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened. If leaving the vehicle without the parking lights on » page 42, then always turn the lights switch to position 0.

Headlight beam adjustment



Fig. 22
Dash panel: Lights and visibility

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Turning the rotary switch » Fig. 22 from position - to 3 gradually activates the headlight beam adjustment, thereby shortening the beam of light.

Settings

The positions correspond approximately to the following car load.

- - Front seats occupied, boot empty.
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded.
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight range adjustment in such a way that:
- it does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming traffic;
- and the range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Function DAY LIGHT (daytime running lights)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Switching on daytime running lights

› Turn the light switch to the 0 position » Fig. 21 on page 38.

Activating/deactivating the daytime running lights function

› Activate and deactivate the daytime running lights by fitting/removing the fuse » page 188, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Deactivating on vehicles with the START-STOP system

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the stalk » Fig. 23 on page 40 towards the steering wheel, simultaneously pushing it down and holding it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition - wait until the left-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition - an audible signal sounds which confirms the deactivation of the daylight driving lights.
› Release the lever.

Activating on vehicles with the START-STOP system

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the stalk » Fig. 23 on page 40 towards the steering wheel, simultaneously pushing it upwards and holding it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition - wait until the right-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition - an audible signal sounds which confirms the activation of the daylight driving lights.
› Release the lever.

On vehicles with separate lights for daylight driving lights in the fog lights or in the front bumper, the parking lights and the licence plate light do not come on when activating the function daylight driving lights (neither front nor rear).

If the vehicle is not equipped with separate lights for daylight driving lights, the combination of the low beam, the parking lights (front and rear) including the licence plate light is used as daylight driving lights.

Turn signal and main beam light

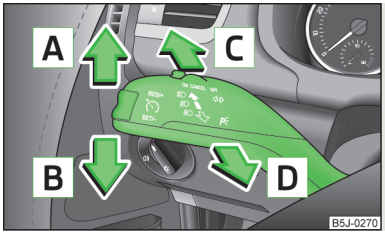

Fig. 23
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The lever is also used to operate the parking light and the headlight flasher.

Right ⇨ and left ⇦ turn signal light
› Push the lever » Fig. 23 upwards A or downwards B.
› If you only wish to flash three times (the "convenience turn signal"), briefly push the lever to the upper or lower pressure point and release again.
› Turn signal for changing lanes - to only flash briefly, move the lever up or down to the pressure point and hold it in this position.

Main beam
› Switch on the low beam » page 38.
› Press the lever » Fig. 23 in the direction of arrow C.
› The main beam is switched off by pulling the lever into the initial position in the direction of arrow D.

Headlight flasher
› Pull the lever » Fig. 23 towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) in the direction of arrow D - the main beam and the warning light in the instrument cluster come on.

Parking light
Description of the operation » page 42

CAUTION

Only use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Note

▪ The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning light ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster also flashes.
▪ The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
▪ The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

For a better cornering illumination, the halogen projector headlights with cornering light function are set in the optimal position in line with the vehicle speed and the steering angle.

WARNING

If the halogen projector headlights with cornering light function are faulty, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. Thus the illuminated length of the road is shortened. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Fog lights

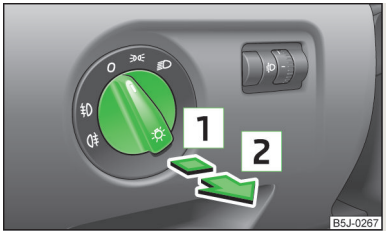

Fig. 24
Dash panel: Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Switching on
› First of all, turn the light switch » Fig. 24 to position or .
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 17.

Foglights with the CORNER function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The fog lights with the function CORNER are designed to improve the illumination of the surrounding area near the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The fog lights with the function CORNER are adjusted according to the steering angle or after switching on the turn signal light [1] in the following circumstances:
› the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running or it moves with a speed of maximum 40 km/h;
› the daytime running lights are not switched on;
› the low beam is switched on;
› the fog lights are not switched on;
› no reverse gear is engaged.

[1] If both switch on versions are conflicting, for example if the steering wheel is turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Switching on
› First of all, turn the light switch » Fig. 24 on page 41 to position or .
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights » page 41, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position or and is pulled out directly to the position 2. This switch does not have two positions, but only one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 17.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer and the rear fog light switched on.

Tourist lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles. When the mode "tourist light" is active, the side to side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

Activating tourist light
Before activating the tourist light, the following conditions must be met.

Ignition switched off, light switched off (light switch in the position 0), control dial for the headlamp beam adjustment in the position -, no gear engaged or selector lever in the position **N** (automatic gearbox), tourist light deactivated.

› Switch on the ignition.

within 10 seconds of the ignition being switched on:

› Turn the light switch to position » page 38, *Switching lights on and off*.

› Engage reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever into the position **R** (automatic gearbox),
› Turn the control dial for headlamp beam adjustment from the position **-** to the position **3** » page 39.

Deactivating tourist light
Before deactivating the tourist light, the following conditions must be met.

Ignition switched off, light switched off (light switch in the position 0), control dial for the headlamp beam adjustment in the position **3**, no gear engaged or selector lever in the position **N** (automatic gearbox), tourist light activated.

› Switch on the ignition.

within 10 seconds of the ignition being switched on:

› Turn the light switch to position » page 38, *Switching lights on and off*.
› Engage reverse gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever into the position **R** (automatic gearbox),
› Turn the control dial for headlamp beam adjustment from the position **3** to the position **-** » page 39.

Further information » page 109, *Headlights*.

Note

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the warning light flashes for 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 25
Dash panel: Switch for hazard warning lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

› Press switch ⚠ » Fig. 25 to switch the hazard warning light system on or off.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the switch also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically if an airbag is deployed in the event of an accident.

Note

The hazard warning light system must be switched on if, for example:
- you encounter a traffic congestion;
- your vehicle breaks down or an emergency situation occurs.

Parking lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Parking light
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the stalk » Fig. 23 on page 40 upwards or push downwards - the side light on the right or left side of the vehicle is switched on.

Parking light on both sides
› Turn the light switch into the position and lock the vehicle.

Note

- The parking light can only be activated if the ignition is switched off.
- If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior lighting - version 1 ____ 43
Interior lighting - version 2 ____ 43
Illuminated storage compartment on the passenger side ____ 44
Luggage compartment light ____ 44

Interior lighting - version 1

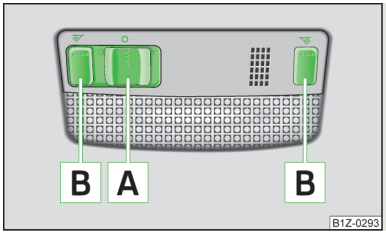

Fig. 26
Interior lighting – version 1

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 43.

Switching on
› Push switch A » Fig. 26 towards the edge of the light, the symbol is revealed.

Switching off
› Push switch A » Fig. 26 to the middle position **0**.

Operating with the door contact switch
› Push switch A » Fig. 26 towards the middle of the light, the is revealed.

Reading lights
› Press switch B » Fig. 26 to switch the reading lights on or off.

If operation of the lights by the door contact switch is enabled (switch A » Fig. 26 is in the position), the light will come on when:
› the vehicle is unlocked;
› one of the doors is opened;
› or the ignition key is removed.

If operation of the lights with the door contact switch is enabled (switch A is the position), the light will go off:
› the vehicle is locked;
› the ignition is switched on;
› about 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

If a door remains open, or if the switch A is in the position, the interior light goes out after 10 minutes to prevent the battery from discharging.

Interior lighting - version 2

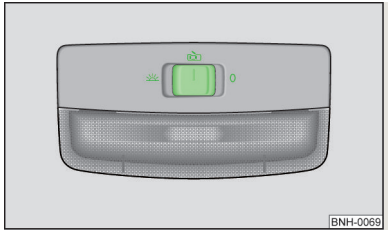

Fig. 27
Interior lighting – version 2

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 43.

Switching on
› Push the switch » Fig. 27 to the position.

Switching off
› Push the switch » Fig. 27 to the **0** position.

Operating with the door contact switch
› Push the switch » Fig. 27 to the position.

The same principles apply for interior lighting version 2 as for » page 43, *Interior lighting - version 1*.

Illuminated storage compartment on the passenger side

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 43.

› When opening the flap of the storage compartment on the front passenger side the lighting in the storage compartment comes on.
› The light switches on automatically when the parking light is switched on and goes out when the flap is closed.

Luggage compartment light

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 43.

The light comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the lid remains open for more than about 10 minutes, the boot light switches off automatically.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater 44
Sun visors 45
sunshade 45

Rear window heater



Fig. 28
Switch for rear window heater

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 44.

› The rear window heater is switched on or off by pressing the symbol switch » Fig. 28; the warning light in the switch lights up or goes out.

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after 7 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 106, *Saving electricity*.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 168, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Sun visors

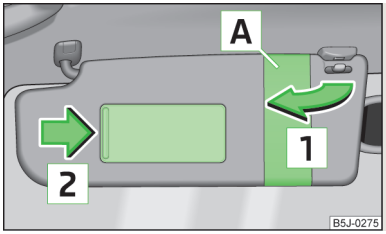

Fig. 29
Sun visor: swivelling out

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 44.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 29.

The vanity mirrors in the sun visors are provided with covers. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The purpose of the strap A is to store small, light objects, such as a notepad, etc.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

sunshade

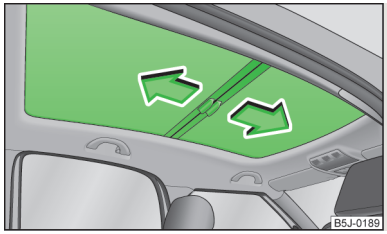

Fig. 30
Sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 44.

Through the panoramic roof tinted glass (hereinafter only as sun roof) the interior can be lit. The panorama roof can be exposed or covered over with the sun screen » Fig. 30. In order to close the panorama roof completely, the sun screen must be pushed into its end position.

Please pay attention to the following points if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle » page 63, ! in section *Introduction*.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wiper and washer 46
Headlight cleaning system 47
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 47
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 47

The windshield wipers and the windshield washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

The rear window is wiped once if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 159.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 47.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Note

- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.
- The content of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is 3.5 litres. On vehicles fitted with the headlight cleaning system, the volume is around 5.4 litres.
- The wiper blades should be cleaned on a regular basis with a windscreen cleaner to avoid any smears. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

Windscreen wiper and washer

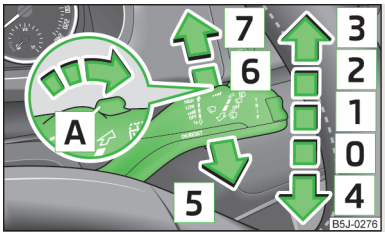

Fig. 31
Operating lever: operation of the windscreen wipers and washer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

Flick wipe

› If you only wish to wipe the windscreen **briefly**, push the lever into the spring-tensioned position 4 » Fig. 31.

Periodic wiping

› Position the lever upwards into position 1 » Fig. 31.
› Set the desired break between the individual wiper strokes with the switch A.

Slow wipe

› Position the lever upwards into position 2 » Fig. 31.

Fast wipe

› Position the lever upwards into position 3 » Fig. 31.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

› Pull the lever towards the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position 5 » Fig. 31, the wash system and the windshield wipers will operate.
› Release the lever. The windscreen wash system stops and the wiper continues for another 1 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

Wiping the rear window pane

› Push the lever away from the steering wheel into position 6 » Fig. 31 and the windscreen wiper will operate every 6 seconds.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window

› Push the lever away from the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position 7 » Fig. 31, the windshield wiper and wash system will operate.

› Release the lever. The washer system stops and the wiper continues for another 1 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the duration of the spraying process). **The lever will stay in position after releasing it** 6.

Switching windscreen wipers off

› Move the lever back into the home position 0 » Fig. 31.

Headlight cleaning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

When the low beam or main beam are switched on, and the windscreen wiper lever is pulled into the position 5 » Fig. 31 on page 46, the headlights are sprayed briefly. To clean the headlights, the windshield is also sprayed after every five squirts.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 147, *Headlight lenses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand - risk of damage!

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

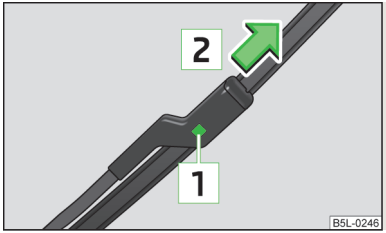

Fig. 32
Windscreen wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
› Press the locking button 1 » Fig. 32 to unlock the wiper blade and pull off in the direction of the arrow 2.

Attaching the wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.

Windshield wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax.

Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windshield by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **clean** and degrease the lips of the windshield wiper blades after **every pass through the automatic vehicle wash system**.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

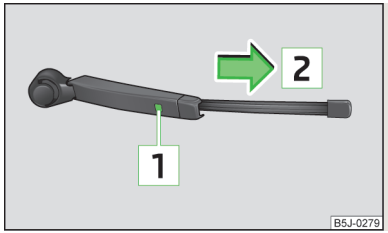

Fig. 33
Rear window wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm away from the window » Fig. 33.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the direction of the wiper arm.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Attaching the wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Rear window

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually dimmed rear-view mirror 48
Additional interior mirror 48
Exterior mirrors 48

Manually dimmed rear-view mirror

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 48.

Basic setting

› Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror forward.

Dimming mirror

› Push the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror backwards.

Additional interior mirror

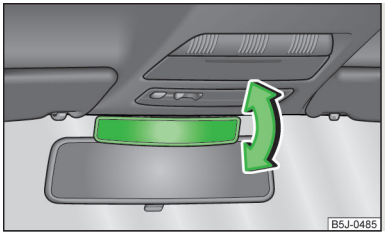

Fig. 34
Additional interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 48.

The additional interior mirror allows the driver a wider field of view of the rear seats.

Adjusting the angle

› Take hold of both the upper and lower edge of the mirror such that you are not touching the surface of the mirror.
› Adjust the mirror in direction of arrow to the desired position.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the additional interior mirror only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.

Exterior mirrors

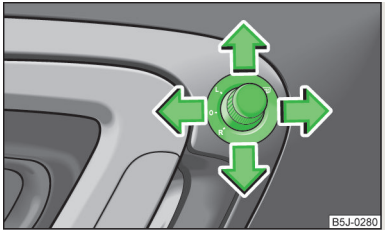

Fig. 35
Inner part of door: Rotary knob

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 48.

Adjust the rear mirror before commencing to drive so that there is a clear view to the rear.

Heating of the external mirror

› Place the rotary knob into the position » Fig. 35.

The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +20 °C.

Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror

› Place the rotary knob into the position **L** » Fig. 35. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror

› Place the rotary knob into the position **R** » Fig. 35. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

WARNING

- Convex (curved outward) exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

Note

- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the power setting function fails at any time, the exterior mirrors can be set by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

Seats and stowing

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats 51
Front seat heating 51

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important:
› for safely and quickly reaching the controls;
› for a relaxed body position that reduces fatigue;
› **for achieving maximum protection from the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 139, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seat) – risk of accident!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions.
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats

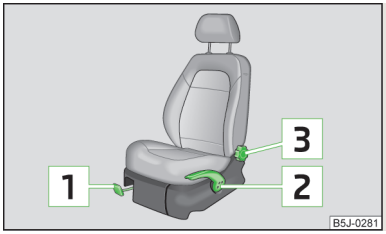

Fig. 36
Control elements at the seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 50.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull the lever 1 » Fig. 36 up and push the seat into the desired position.
› Release the lever 1 and push the seat until the lock clicks into place.

Adjusting height of seat

› To lift the seat, pull or pump the lever 2 » Fig. 36 upwards.
› To lower the seat, push or pump the lever 2 downwards.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› To adjust the angle of the backrest, relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel 3 » Fig. 36.

Front seat heating

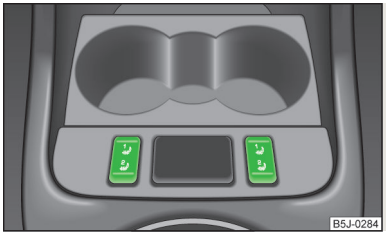

Fig. 37
Rocker switch for front seat heating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 50.

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

› By pressing the rocker switch in the position **1** or **2** switch on the front seat heating to 25 % or 100 % of its power output » Fig. 37.
› To switch off the heating shift the rocker switch into the horizontal position.

WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points to avoid damaging the heating elements for the seat heaters.
- Do not use the seat heaters if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects, such as a child seat, bag, etc., are fastened or stored on them. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 150, *Seat covers*.

Note

- The seat heating should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 168, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

headrest adjust 52

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants » page 124.

WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

headrest adjust

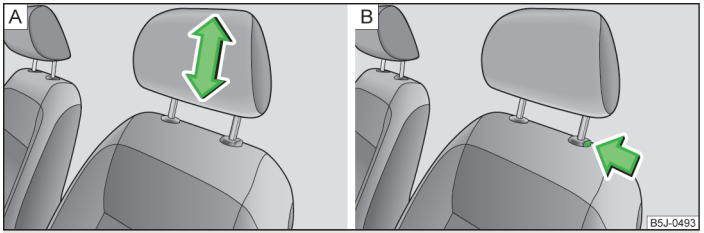

Fig. 38 **Head restraint: adjusting/removing**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 52.

Setting height

› Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 38 - A.
› To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 38 - B with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

Removing/installing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in direction of the arrow » Fig. 38 - B and pull the head restraint out.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction 53
Setting theinclination of the seat backrest 53
Fold downseat backrest and seat fold down completely 53
Unlocking and removing seats 54
Adjusting seats in crosswise direction 54
Folding the rear seats into the starting position 55

Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction

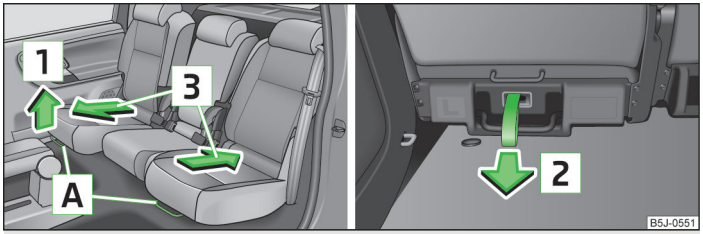

Fig. 39 **Releasing at the front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 52.

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 39 up in the direction of arrow 1 or on the release loop in direction of arrow 2 and move the seat into the desired position 3.

WARNING

The following guidelines must be observed » page 125, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats.*

Setting theinclination of the seat backrest

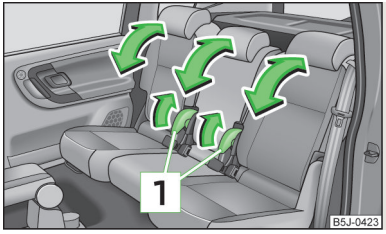

Fig. 40
Adjusting the seat backrest

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 52.

› Pull the lever 1 » Fig. 40 and adjust the required inclination of the seat backrest.

WARNING

Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.

Fold downseat backrest and seat fold down completely

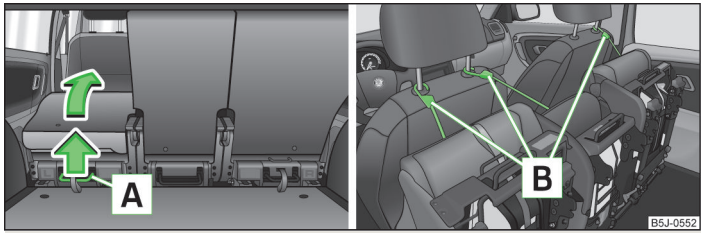

Fig. 41 **Fold seat fully forwards/lock folded forward seats**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 52.

Folding the seat backrest forwards

› Put the belt tongue into the opening on the respective side of the vehicle - safety position.
› Remove the head restraint from the rear middle seat » page 52, *Head restraints*.
› Push the outer rear seats towards the rear as far as they will go » page 53, *Setting theSetting the seats in the longitudinal direction*.
› Pull the lever 1 » Fig. 40 on page 53 and fold the seat backrest completely forwards.
› Pull the lever » Fig. 41 up before folding the seat forwards fully.

Folding seats fully forwards and locking them

› If the outer rear seat is fully folded forward, push it towards the rear as far as it can go.
› Pull the lever A » Fig. 41 up and fold the seat forwards fully.

› Secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt B to a guide rod of the head restraint for the front seat » Fig. 41.

WARNING

- Immediately lock the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt to a guide rod of the head restraint for the front seat - risk of injury.
- The following guidelines must be observed » page 125, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.

CAUTION

If the outer seat is not in the rear end position when folding forward, damage can occur to the locking bolts when unlocking the seat.

Unlocking and removing seats

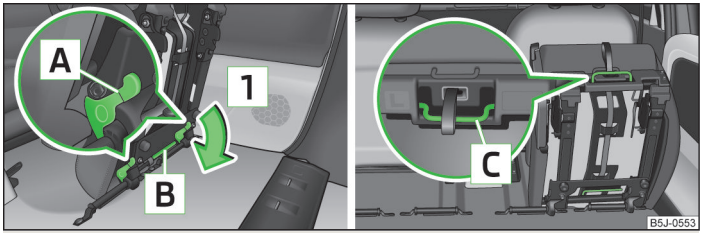

Fig. 42 **Unlocking the folded forward seat/carrying handles on the seat cushion**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 52.

› Fold the seat forward » page 53, *Fold downseat backrest and seat fold down completely* .
› Unlock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A » Fig. 42 in direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the seat using the carrying handles B or C.

WARNING

The following guidelines must be observed » page 125.

Note

The outer seats are not mutually interchangeable. In the rear area the left seat is marked with the letter **L** and the right seat with the letter **R**.

Adjusting seats in crosswise direction

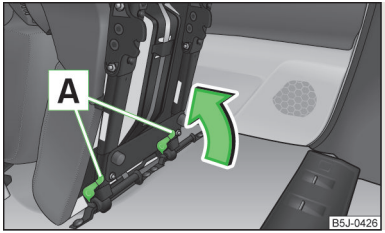

Fig. 43
Locking seats

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 52.

› Remove the middle seat » page 54, *Unlocking and removing seats*.
› Fold the outer seat forward » page 53, *Fold downseat backrest and seat fold down completely* and unlock » Fig. 42 on page 54.
› Move the folded forward and unlocked seat on the guide towards the middle of the vehicle up to the stop.
› Lock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A » Fig. 43 in the direction of arrow.

Folding the rear seats into the starting position

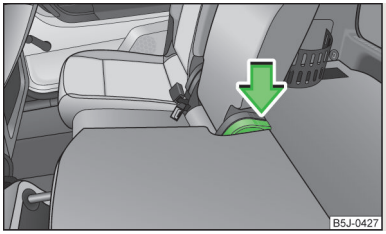

Fig. 44
Folding the seat backrest back into position

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 52.

› If the seat is removed, first of all position it on the guide and lock the seat » Fig. 43 on page 54. Pull the seat upwards to ensure that the seat is locked correctly.
› Fold the seat in the horizontal position until it can be heard to click. Check for yourself that the seat can no longer be lifted by pulling it up.
› Press the lever » Fig. 44 and fold back the seat backrest. Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.
› Remove the tongue of the lock from the safety position.

WARNING

▪ The belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
▪ The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – there is a risk of injury.
▪ When folding the seat backrest always make sure that it has safely locked into position, this is confirmed by the position and a visible marking on the cover of the lever.

Boot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles 56
Fastening elements 56
Folding hooks 57
Fixing nets 57
Fixing floor covering of the luggage compartment 57
Boot cover 58
Net partition 58

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the fixing net » page 56.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries. The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object. The speed at which the vehicle is travelling is in this case the more significant factor.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ". You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "object" flies through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, objects that are thrown back may injure the occupants – risk to life.
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting fastened objects which are sharp and dangerous in the boot that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 125, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Under no circumstances should the permissible axle loads and the permissible total vehicle weight be exceeded – risk of accident!
- Never transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 170, *Service life of tyres*.

Class N1 vehicles

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Fastening elements

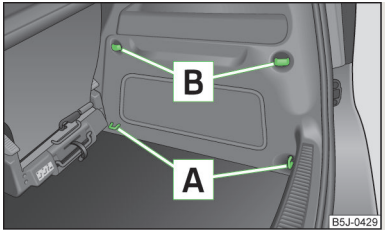

Fig. 45
Boot: Lashing eyes and fastening elements

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

The boot provides the following fastening elements » Fig. 45.

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
B Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Folding hooks

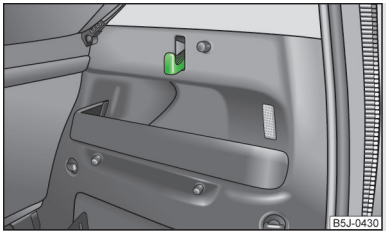

Fig. 46
Boot: folding hooks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

Folding hooks » Fig. 46 for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Fixing nets

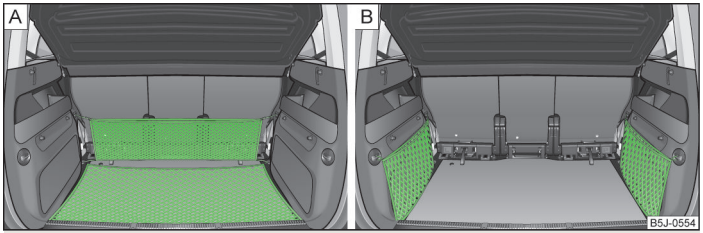

Fig. 47 **Fixing net: double horizontal pocket, floor fixing net/double vertical pockets**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

Fixing examples of the fixing net as a double horizontal pocket, floor fixing net » Fig. 47 - A and double vertical pockets » Fig. 47 - B.

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Fixing floor covering of the luggage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

You can fix the raised floor cover between the backrests and the luggage compartment cover, if one needs to reach the spare wheel.

Boot cover

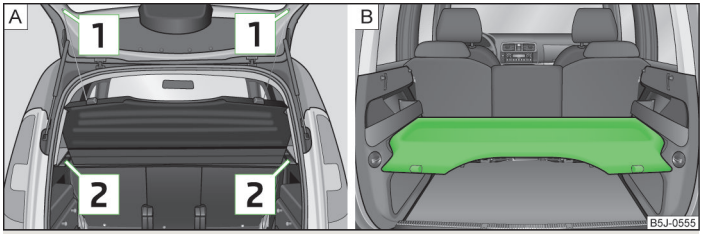

Fig. 48 **Removing the luggage compartment cover/luggage compartment cover in the lower position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

The boot cover can be removed if you wish to transport bulky goods.

› Unhook the support straps 1 » Fig. 48.
› Fold the luggage compartment cover forwards a little.
› Remove the cover from the holders 2 by pulling towards the rear, or by lightly knocking on the underside of the cover in the area between the holders.
› To reinstall, first of all push the luggage compartment cover into the holders 2 and then hook the support straps 1 on the boot lid.

The luggage compartment cover can also be put into the lower position on the supporting elements » Fig. 48 - B.

The procedure of installing or removing is identical.

In this position you can store smaller objects up on the luggage compartment cover up to a total weight of 2.5 kg.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

Note

When opening the boot lid, the luggage compartment cover is lifted up at the same time- risk that objects placed in this area can slip forward!

Net partition

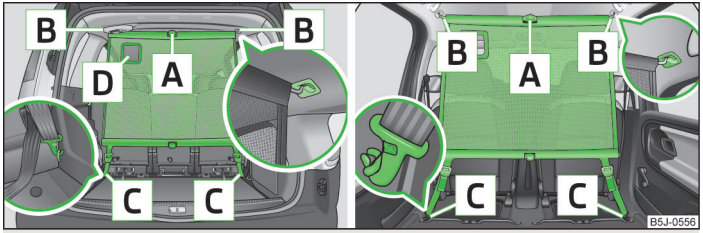

Fig. 49 **Using the net partition behind the front/rear seats**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 55.

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Installing the net partition behind the rear seats

› Remove the boot cover » page 58, *Boot cover*.
› Remove the net partition from the bag.
› Unfold both parts of the cross rod until they are heard to engage.
› First of all insert the cross rod into the mount B » Fig. 49 on one side and push it forward. In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount B on the other side of the vehicle.
› Hang the carabines C at the ends of the belt into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the belt through the tensioning clasp on both sides- first of all on the one side and then on the other side.

Removing the net partition

› Undo the belts on both sides and unhook the carabines C » Fig. 49.
› Push the cross rod first of all on the one side and then on the other side towards the rear.
› Remove the cross rod from the mounts B.

Packing the net partition

› Press the red button of the joint A » Fig. 49- the joint becomes loose.
› Put the net partition folded together in the bag and close it.
› Attach the bag with the aid of the plastic carabines to the eyes on the left and right boot trim panel.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats is carried out analogously as behind the rear seats. Use the lower fixing eyes on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines. To enlarge the boot, the rear seats can be removed.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats with variable loading floor » page 59 is carried out analogously as behind the rear seats without variable loading floor. To attach the carabines, use the lower eyes at the fixing wedges on the front part of the variable loading floor.

The opening D » Fig. 49 in the net partition is designed to feed through the three-point seat belt » page 130, *Seat belt for the rear middle seat*.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dividing up the luggage compartment with variable loading floor ____ 59
Removing and refitting the variable loading floor ____ 60
Removing/installing the carrier rails ____ 60
Removing/installing the lateral carrier rail and fixing wedges ____ 61

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Note

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.

Dividing up the luggage compartment with variable loading floor

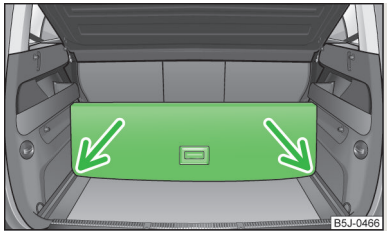

Fig. 50
Dividing the boot

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

› Lift up the part with the holder and secure it by sliding it into the grooves marked with the arrows » Fig. 50.

Removing and refitting the variable loading floor

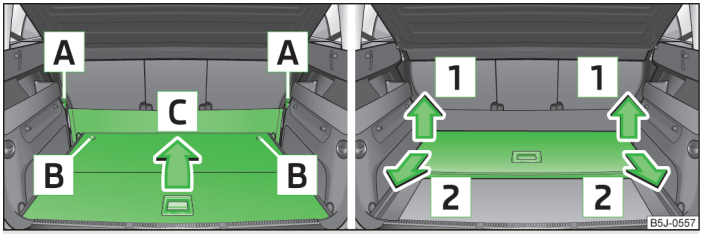

Fig. 51 **Fold up variable loading floor/remove**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

Removing

› Unhook the loops A » Fig. 51 of the elastic partition out of the fixing points.
› Unlock the variable loading floor by turning the locking bolts B to the left by around 180°.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow C.
› Fold up the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove by pulling in the direction of the arrow 2.

Install

› Fold up the variable loading floor and place it on the carrier rails.
› Fold out the variable loading floor.
› Lock the variable loading floor by turning the locking bolts B » Fig. 51 to the right by around 180°.
› Secure the loops A of the elastic partition to the fixing points.

WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when installing the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Removing/installing the carrier rails

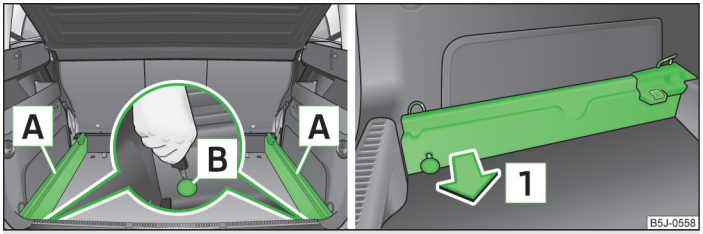

Fig. 52 **Boot: Slacken check points/remove carrier rails**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

Removing

› Slacken the check points B » Fig. 52 on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver.
› Remove the carrier rail A and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 1. The carrier rail on the other side of the luggage compartment can be removed in the same way.

Install

› Position the carrier rails on the sides of the boot.
› Press the check point on each carrier rail B » Fig. 52 up to the stop.
› Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when installing the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Removing/installing the lateral carrier rail and fixing wedges

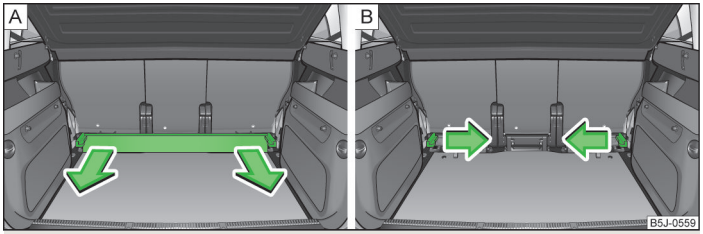

Fig. 53 **Boot: Take out lateral carrier rail/Take out fixing wedges**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

Removing

› Remove the lateral carrier rail » Fig. 53 - A and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow.
› Remove the fixing wedge » Fig. 53 - B and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow. To remove the fixing wedge on the other side of the luggage compartment, proceed in the same way.

Install

› Put the fixing wedge on the fixing points and press in the direction of the sides of the luggage compartment up to the stop.
› Insert the lateral carrier rail at an angle to the fixing wedges and press it up to the stop.
› Check how well the lateral carrier rail is fastened by pulling on it.

Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Install cross member 61
Install bicycle carrier 62
Put bicycle into the bicycle carrier 62
Secure the stability of the bicycles with a belt 62

WARNING

When transporting bicycles, ensuring the safety of the passengers is paramount.

CAUTION

Take care handling the bicycle - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Install cross member

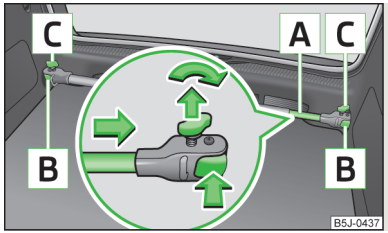

Fig. 54
Install cross member

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 61.

› Remove the luggage compartment cover » page 58.
› Fold the rear seats forward, remove » page 54.
› Undo the securing screws C » Fig. 54 and remove a little to unlock the holders B.
› Place the cross member A with the fixed part onto the right lashing eye and then place it on the left lashing eye with the removable part of the cross member A.
› Press the holders B until they latch. Tighten the securing screws C.
› Check how well the cross member is fastened by pulling on it.

Install bicycle carrier

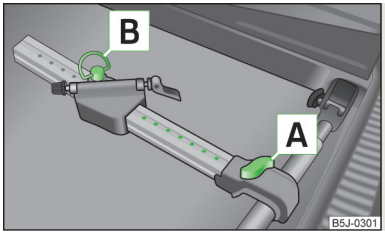

Fig. 55
Install bicycle carrier

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 61.

› Position the approved bicycle carrier on the cross member.
› Remove the screw A » Fig. 55 a little and push the frame side rail (alu-part) towards the cross member until the socket latches.
› Insert the screw A into the nut.
› Undo the screw B on the movable part of the bicycle carrier and unscrew.
› Place the movable part of the fixture, depending on the size of the vehicle, in one of the possible positions so that the bicycle does not touch the boot lid. We recommend to place the moveable part of the fixture in such a position that 7 holes are visible between the screw A and the moveable part.
› Insert the screw B into the desired position and tighten.

Put bicycle into the bicycle carrier

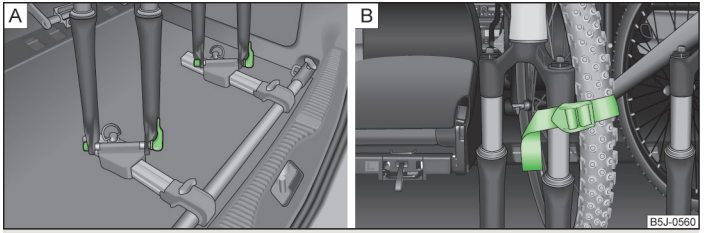

Fig. 56 **Put in the bicycle/example fastening the front wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 61.

› Remove the front wheel of the bicycle before installing it.
› Slacken the quick tension jack on the fixing axle of the bicycle carrier and adjust according to the width of the bicycle fork.
› Fit the bicycle fork onto the fixing axle and tighten with the quick tension jack » Fig. 56 - A.
› Position the left pedal of the bicycle forward, in order to attach the front wheel more easily.
› Undo the screw A » Fig. 55 on page 62 and push the bicycle carrier to the left together with the fastened bicycle to prevent a collision between the steering wheel and the side window of the luggage compartment.
› Carefully guide the boot lid downwards without letting go of it. Check whether there is sufficient room between the steering bars and the rear window. If necessary, adjust the position of the movable part of the bicycle carrier to prevent a collision » page 62.
› It is best to store the removed front wheel between the crank of the left pedal and the bicycle frame, attach it with a strap to the front fork » Fig. 56 - B and/or to one of the fixing points.
› The second carrier is installed and the bicycle is secured in a similar way.

Secure the stability of the bicycles with a belt

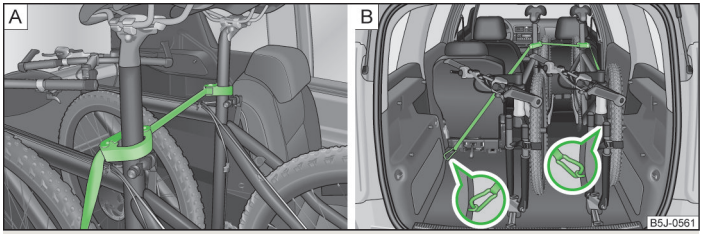

Fig. 57 **Securing bicycles**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 61.

› To slacken the rubber part of the clamp, push both parts against each other and open the clamp.

› Position the clamp with the rubber part to the front (in direction of travel) as far as possible below the saddle support and close the clamp » Fig. 57 - A.
› When transporting two bicycles, clamp the belt » Fig. 57 - A between the saddles by moving the bicycles apart.
› Hang the carabines at the ends of the belt into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats » Fig. 57 - B.
› Pull the belt through the tensioning clasps on both sides in turn.
› If necessary, you can correct the position of the bicycles in the vehicle.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Roof load 63

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- Transporting heavy or large objects on the roof rack alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity or the increased wind exposure area – risk of accident! The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.
- If other roof rack systems are used or if the roof bars are not fitted correctly, any resulting damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. It is therefore essential that the supplied fitting instructions for the roof rack system are observed.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Note

If the vehicle is not factory-equipped with a roof rack, it can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Roof load

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 63.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Cupholders 64
Ashtray 64
Cigarette lighter 65
12-volt power outlet 65
Clothes hook 66
Car park ticket holder 66

Cupholders

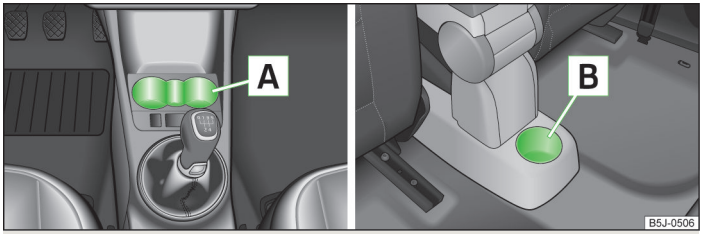

Fig. 58 **Cup holder**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the recesses A » Fig. 58.

One beverage container can be placed into the recess B.

WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Ashtray

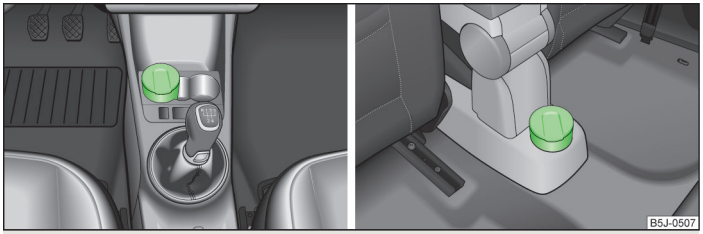

Fig. 59 **Centre console: Ashtray at the front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

Removing

› Pull out the ashtray » Fig. 59 upwards.

Install

› Insert the ashtray vertically.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray at the cover – risk of breakage.

Cigarette lighter

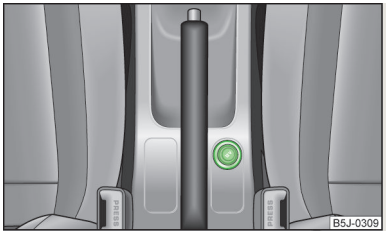

Fig. 60
Centre console: Cigarette lighter

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

Using the system
› Press in the button of the cigarette lighter » Fig. 60.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

▪ Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.
▪ The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 65.

12-volt power outlet

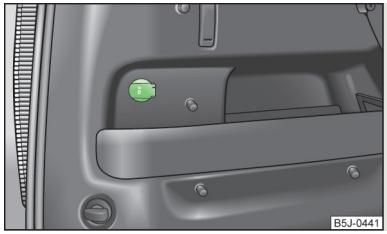

Fig. 61
Boot: Power socket

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket
In the front centre console » Fig. 60 on page 65.

In the boot » Fig. 61.

Using the power socket
› Remove the cover from power socket or cigarette lighter, or open the cover for the power socket.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

WARNING

▪ Improper use of the 12-volt power socket and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
▪ Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The 12-volt power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn.
▪ If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

▪ The 12-volt power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
▪ Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.

▪ If electrical consumers are switched on when the engine is not running, this will cause the car battery to discharge – risk of battery discharge!
▪ Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the 12-volt power socket.
▪ Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
▪ Before turning the ignition on or off, and before starting the car, switch off the device connected to the 12-volt power socket to prevent any damage caused by voltage fluctuations.
▪ Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Clothes hook

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

The clothes hooks are located on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

▪ Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.
▪ Only use the hooks for hanging light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
▪ Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Car park ticket holder

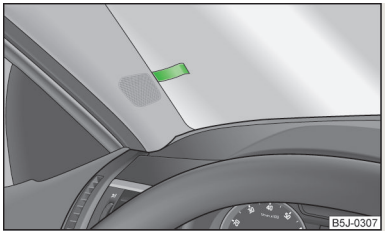

Fig. 62
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartments

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storage compartment on the front passenger side 67
Cooling the storage compartment on the front passenger side 67
Storage compartment on the driver's side 68
storage pockets on the front seats 68
sunglasses compartment 68
Storage compartment in the front centre console 69
storage compartment under the front seat 69
Front armrest with storage compartment 69
folding table in the middle back seat 70
slots in the doors 70

stowage compartments in the luggage 71
Flexible storage compartment 71

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal – risk of accident!

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

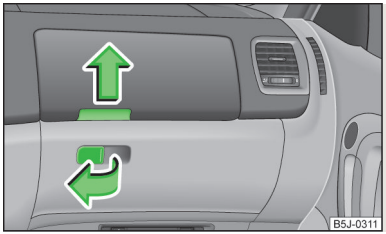

Fig. 63
Dash panel: Storage compartments on the front passenger side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

Open/close

› Pull the handle of the flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 63 and fold down the flap.
› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

A pin holder is located inside the lower flap.

WARNING

The storage compartments must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Cooling the storage compartment on the front passenger side

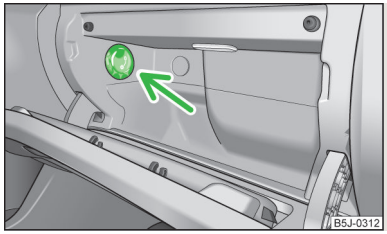

Fig. 64
Storage compartment: Using cooling system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

› Use the rotary switch » Fig. 64 to open/close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

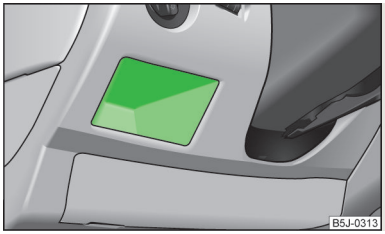

Fig. 65
Dash panel: Storage compartment on the driver's side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The stowage compartment below the light switch » Fig. 65.

storage pockets on the front seats

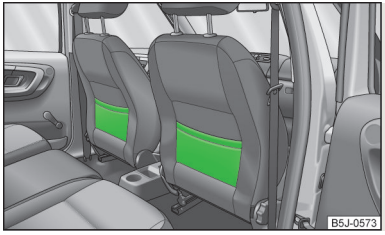

Fig. 66
Front seat rests: Map pockets

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

Map pockets are located on the rear of the seat backrests » Fig. 66.

The map pockets are intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Do not put any large items such as bottles or sharp objects into the map pockets, as the pockets and the seat covers could be damaged.

sunglasses compartment

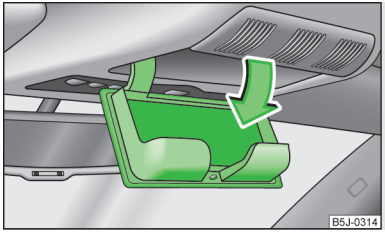

Fig. 67
Detail of the headliner: Glasses storage box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

› Press on the cover of the glasses storage box in the area of the bar. The compartment folds down » Fig. 67.

! WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed.

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - they may be damaged.
- The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

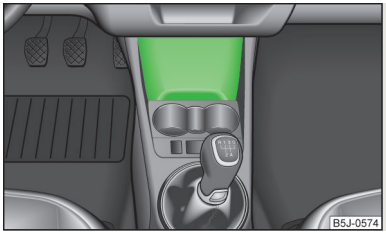

Fig. 68
Centre console: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The open stowage compartment in the centre console » Fig. 68.

storage compartment under the front seat

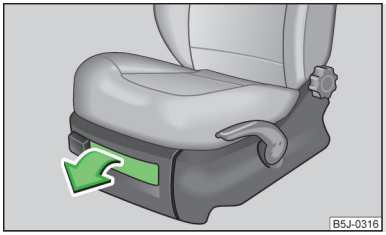

Fig. 69
Front seat: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

› To open the lid, pull the handle » Fig. 69.
› When closing the lid, hold the handle until the compartment is closed.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1 kg. in weight.

Front armrest with storage compartment

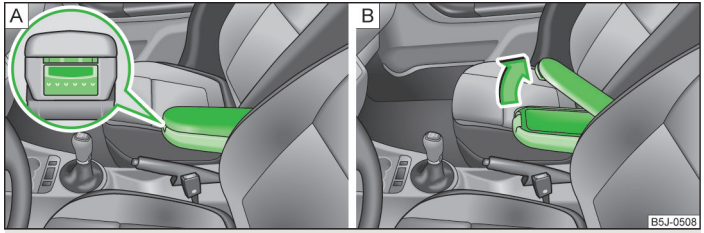

Fig. 70 **Armrest: Storage compartment/open storage compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

Fold the armrest forwards
› Press the bottom button on the face end of the armrest » Fig. 70 - A.
› Fold the arm rest forward and release the button again.

Opening the storage compartment
› Press the top button and fold the cover of the stowage compartment upwards » Fig. 70 - B.

Note

The moving space of the arms can be restricted if the armrest is folded forwards. In city traffic the armrest should not be folded forwards.

folding table in the middle back seat

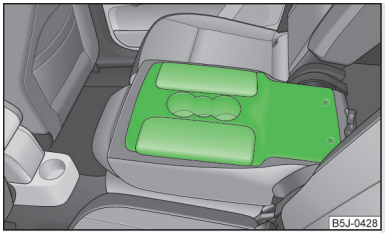

Fig. 71
Rear seats: Armrest

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The medium seat rest can be used after folding the » page 53, *Fold downseat backrest and seat fold down completely* armrest forward or the table with the cup holder » Fig. 71.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the recesses.

! WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- If the middle rear seat backrest should be folded forward for lengthy periods, then make sure that the belt locks are not located below it - this can warp the upholstery or fabric.

slots in the doors

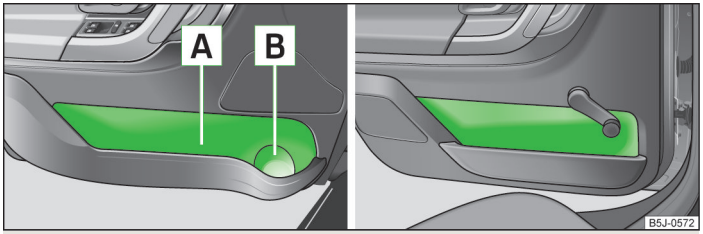

Fig. 72 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

A bottle holder is located in the area B » Fig. 72 of the storage compartment for the front doors.

! WARNING

Use the area A » Fig. 72 of the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

stowage compartments in the luggage

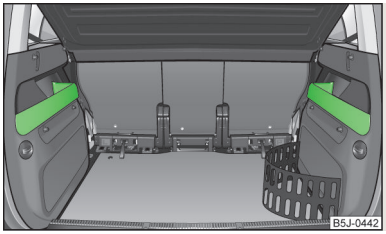

Fig. 73
Storage compartments in the side trim panel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

Storage compartments are located on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 73.

CAUTION

The storage compartments are designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.

Flexible storage compartment

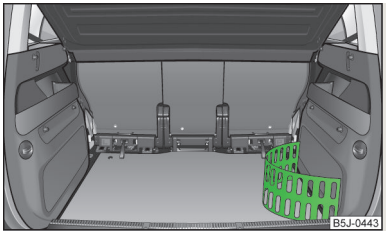

Fig. 74
Flexible storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The flexible storage compartment » Fig. 74 can be built into the right-hand side of the luggage compartment.

Install
› Insert both ends of the flexible storage compartment into the openings of the right side trim panel of the boot and push it downwards until it locks.

Removing
› Grasp the flexible storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Press the upper corners inwards and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
› Remove by pulling towards you.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Note

If the variable loading floor » page 59 is installed in the luggage compartment, no flexible storage compartment can be installed.

Praktik

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Lashings 72
Adjustable safety partition behind the front seats 72
Attachment of the loading floor 72
Adjustment of the safety partition 73
Emergency release of the loading area door 73
Interior lighting 73

WARNING

The load to be transported must always be secured safely so that it does not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Lashings

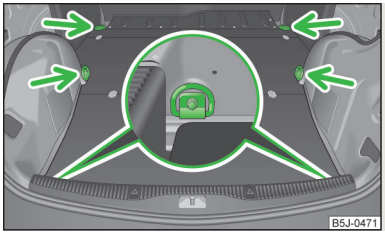

Fig. 75
Loading area: Lashing eyes

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

Eyes are located on the sides of the loading area for lashing the load to be loaded » Fig. 75.

Adjustable safety partition behind the front seats

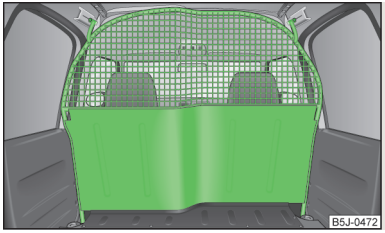

Fig. 76
Adjustable safety partition

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

The adjustable safety partition behind the front seats can be adjusted up to 100 mm (only valid for certain countries) for improving the comfort for the driver and the front passenger.

Attachment of the loading floor

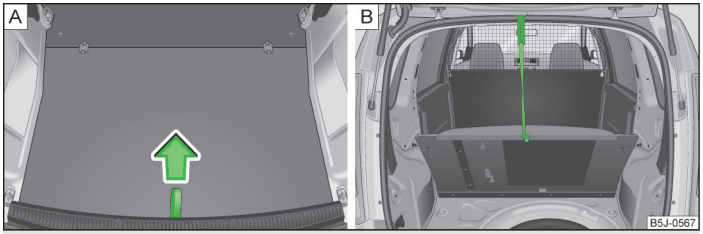

Fig. 77 **Loop for raising the loading floor/Fixing the loading floor with a plastic hook**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

You can fix the loading floor with a hook on the top edge of the boot lid cutout, in order to e. g. reach the spare wheel.

› Raise the loading floor at the loop » Fig. 77 - A and fix it with a plastic hook (it is located below the loading floor edge) to the top edge of the tailgate cutout » Fig. 77 - B.

Adjustment of the safety partition

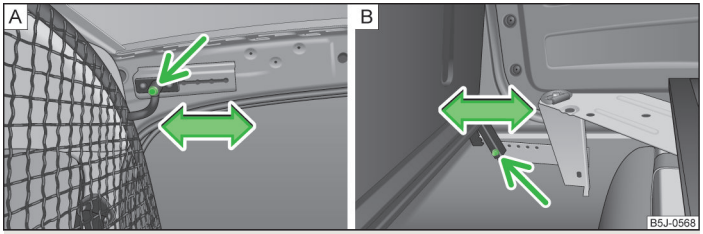

Fig. 78 **Top/lower support of the safety partition**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

Only valid for some countries.

› Raise the loading floor part behind the safety partition.
› On each side in the upper area of the body, undo and remove a bolt » Fig. 78 - A and undo and remove a bolt in the lower area » Fig. 78 - B.
› Move the safety partition into the required position. Ensure it is always move the same distance- the same number of holes on both sides both upwards and downwards.
› On each side in the upper area of the body, undo and remove a bolt and undo and remove a bolt in the lower area.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible. The tightening torque must be 20 Nm.
› Change the position of the cover of the luggage compartment floor behind the safety partition so that it lines up with the new position of the safety partition.
› Fold back the loading floor part.

Emergency release of the loading area door

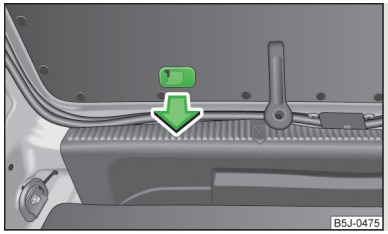

Fig. 79
Emergency unlocking of the loading area door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

If there is a fault in the central locking, you can unlock the loading area door as follows:

› Pull the control cable towards you and pull on it.
› Press on the loading area door to open it.
› Press the control cable back again.

Interior lighting

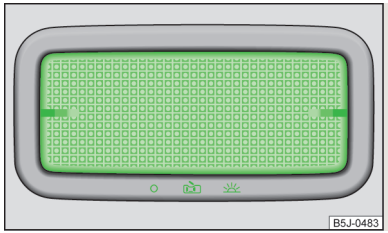

Fig. 80
Interior light - Praktik

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

Switching on

› Place the cover glass in the position » Fig. 80.

Switching off

› Place the cover glass in the position **O** » Fig. 80.

Door contact setting

› Place the cover glass in the middle position » Fig. 80.

Note

We recommend you have the bulb replacement performed by a specialist garage. ■

Heating and air-conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents ____ 75
Using the air conditioning system economically ____ 76
Operational problems ____ 76

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The well-being of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » page 80 or for Climatronic » page 82.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.
- Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- The used air streams out through the vents in the boot.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).
- To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems work properly, do not block up the air outlet vents with any objects.

Air outlet vents

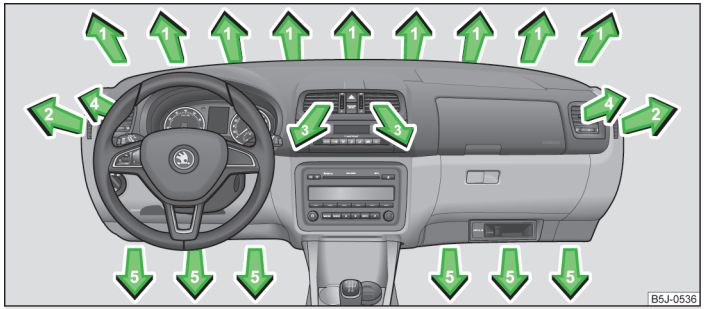

Fig. 81 **Air outlet vents**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

Open the air outlet vents 3 and 4

› Turn the vertical wheel (air vents **3**) » Fig. 81 or the horizontal wheel (air outlet nozzles **4**) into position .

Close air outlet vents 3 and 4

› Turn the vertical wheel (air vents **3**) » Fig. 81 or the horizontal wheel (air outlet nozzles **4**) into position **0**.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 3 and 4

› In order to change the strength of the air flow, swivel the horizontal lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster » Fig. 81.
› In order to change the lateral direction of the air flow, swivel the vertical lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster.

Set the air supply to the individual vents with the air distribution control C » Fig. 82 on page 77. Air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 81 and **4** can also be opened or closed individually.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system and the atmospheric conditions.

Using the air conditioning system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved.

Operational problems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 187.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 9.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Heating

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 77
Setting the heating 77
Recirculated air mode 78

Operation

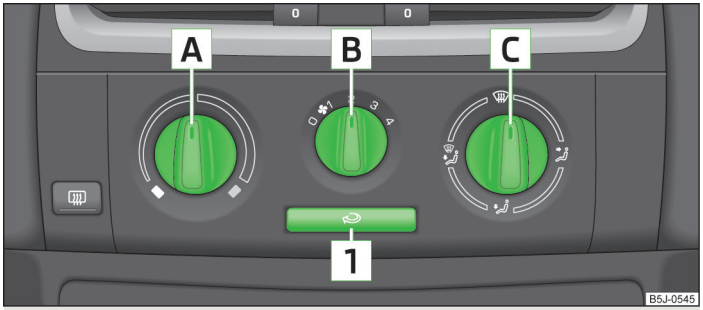

Fig. 82 **Heating: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

Setting temperature

› Turn the control dial A » Fig. 82 to the right to increase the temperature.

› Turn the control dial A to the left to decrease the temperature.

Controlling blower

› Turn the blower switch B » Fig. 82 into one of the positions, 1 to 4, to switch the blower on.
› Turn the blower switch B into position 0 to switch the blower off.
› If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button 1 » page 78, ! in section *Recirculated air mode*.

Regulating the air distribution

› The direction of the inlet air flow is controlled with air distribution regulator C » Fig. 82 » page 75.

All controls apart from the blower switch B » Fig. 82 can be set to any desired intermediate position.

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Note

If the air distribution is positioned towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.

Setting the heating

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial			Button 1	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 81 on page 75
	A	B	C		
Defrosting the windshield and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windshield and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Briefly switch on	Opening

Set-up	Setting of the control dial			Button 1	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 81 on page 75
	A	B	C		
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Opening

Note

- Controls A » Fig. 82 on page 77, B, C and the button 1.
- We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » page 75 in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 76.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on

› Press the button 1 » Fig. 82 on page 77 and the warning light in the button illuminates.

Switching off

› Press the button 1 » Fig. 82 on page 77again - the warning light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 82 on page 77 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the button .

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 79
Setting the air conditioning system 80
Recirculated air mode 80

The cooling system only operates if the button AC 2 » Fig. 83 on page 79 is pressed, and the following conditions are met:

› engine running;
› outside temperature above approx. +2 °C;
› blower switch switched on (positions 1 to 4).

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on. Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons.

Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Operation

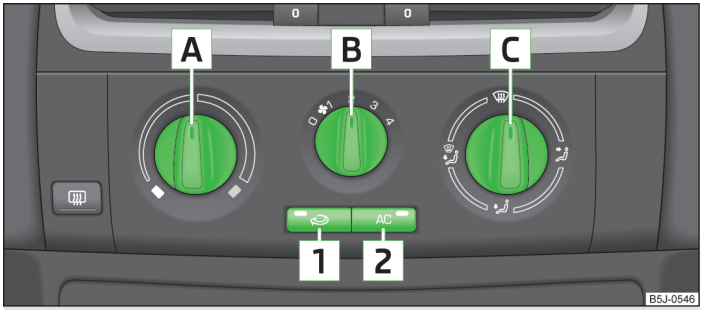

Fig. 83 **The air conditioning system: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 78.

Setting temperature

› Turn the control dial A » Fig. 83 to the right to increase the temperature.
› Turn the control dial A to the left to decrease the temperature.

Controlling blower

› Turn the blower switch B » Fig. 83 into one of the positions, 1 to 4, to switch the blower on.
› Turn the blower switch B into position 0 to switch the blower off.
› Press the button 1 to close the fresh air supply » Fig. 83.

Regulating the air distribution

› The direction of the inlet air flow is controlled with air distribution regulator C » Fig. 83 » page 75.

Switching the cooling system on and off

› Press the button AC 2 » Fig. 83 and the warning light in the button illuminates.
› Pressing the button AC 2 again switches off the cooling system - the indicator light in the button goes out.

Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to defrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The warning light in the AC button lights up after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the operation of the cooling system have been met. The operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled when the warning light in the button lights up.

Setting the air conditioning system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 78.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial			Button		Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 81 on page 75
	A	B	C	1	2	
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows[a)]	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Do not switch on	Automatically switched on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Briefly switch on	Switched off	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Briefly switch on[b)]	Activated	Opening
Optimal cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Do not switch on	Activated	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening

a) We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.
b) Under certain conditions, recirculated air mode » page 80 may come on automatically; the warning light will then light up in the button.

Note

- Controls A » Fig. 83 on page 79, B, C and buttons 1 and 2.
- We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » page 75 in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 78.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on

› Press the button 1 » Fig. 83 on page 79 and the warning light in the button illuminates.

Switching off

› Press the button 1 » Fig. 83 on page 79again - the warning light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 83 on page 79 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the button .

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of the controls 81
automatic mode 82
Setting the temperature 82
Recirculated air mode 82
Controlling blower 83
Defrosting windscreen 83

The Climatronic maintains fully automatically a convenience temperature. This is achieved by automatically varying the temperature of the air flow, the blower stages and air distribution. The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually. The **automatic mode** » page 82 ensures maximum well-being of the occupants at all times of the year.

Description of Climatronic system

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met:
› engine running;
› outside temperature above approx. +2 °C;
› AC 18 » Fig. 84 on page 81 switched on.

The AC compressor is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year.
› Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
› Press the button AUTO 12 » Fig. 84 on page 81.
› Move the air outlet vents **3** » page 75 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit
Press and hold the buttons AUTO and AC » Fig. 84 on page 81 at the same time. The information in the desired temperature measuring unit appears in the display.

Note

We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Overview of the controls

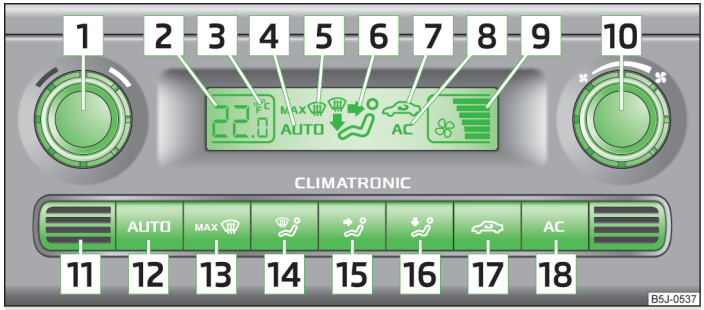

Fig. 84 **Climatronic: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

The buttons/control dial
1 Setting the interior temperature

The displays
2 Display of selected interior temperature
3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit
4 Automatic air conditioning mode
5 De-mist or de-ice the windshield
6 Direction of air flow
7 Recirculated air mode

8 Cooling system on/off
9 Set blower speed

The buttons/control dial

10 Setting the blower speed
11 Interior temperature sensor
12 Automatic mode
13 De-mist or de-ice the windshield
14 Air flow to the windows
15 Air flow to head
16 Air flow in the footwell
17 Recirculated air mode
18 Switch cooling system on/off

Note

The interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 84 is located in the bottom part of the device. Do not stick anything on or cover the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

automatic mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Switching on

› Set a temperature between +18 °C and +29 °C.
› Move the air outlet vents **3** » page 75 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.
› Press the button AUTO 12 » Fig. 84 on page 81; **AUTO** is shown in the display.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

Setting the temperature

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

› The required interior temperature can be set with the control dial 1 » Fig. 84 on page 81 after switching on the ignition.

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range. If you select the temperature below +18 °C, "LO" appears in the display. If you select the temperature higher than +29 °C, "HI" appears in the display. In both limit positions the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity, respectively. The temperature is not controlled in this case.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on

› Press the button 17 » Fig. 84 on page 81; the symbol appears in the display.

Switching off

› Press the button 17 » Fig. 84 on page 81 again and the symbol disappears from the display.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

If recirculated air mode is switched on for around 15 minutes, the symbol will begin to flash in the display as a sign that the recirculated air mode is switched on long-term. If the recirculated air mode is not switched off, the symbol flashes for around 5 minutes.

Controlling blower

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

› Turn the control dial 10 » Fig. 84 on page 81 to the left (reduce blower speed) or right (increase blower speed).

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

Switching on

› Press the button MAX 13 » Fig. 84 on page 81.

Switching off

› Once again press the button MAX 13 » Fig. 84 on page 81 or the button AUTO.

The temperature control is controlled automatically. More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** » page 75 and **2**.

Communication and multimedia

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems 84
Introductory information 84
Phone Phonebook 85
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel 85
Inserting the mobile phone and adapter 86
Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter 86
Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system 87
Symbols in the information display 88
Operate the telephone via the information display 88

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The reasons for this are as follows:
› no external aerial;
› external aerial incorrectly installed;
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety. Use the telephone system only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.
- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury.
- In the event of air transport, the Bluetooth® function for the hands-free system must be switched off by a specialist garage.

Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Partner.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II. You can ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your telephone is compatible with the GSM II universal telephone fitting.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Introductory information

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II (hands-free system) includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the adapter, radio or the navigation system.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
› Phone Phonebook » page 85.
› Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 85.
› Managing telephone calls via the adapter » page 86.
› Operation of the telephone via the information display » page 88.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 89.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 90.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology. The adapter serves only for charging the telephone and for transmitting the signal to the vehicle's external aerial.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 84, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Phone Phonebook

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

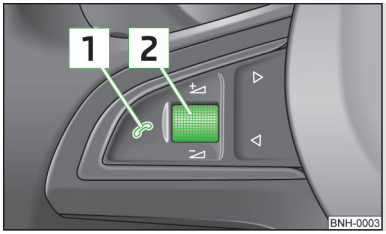

Fig. 85
Multifunction steering wheel: Mobile phone operation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

The driver can set the basic functions of the telephone by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel so that he can concentrate on the traffic situation without being distracted as little as possible by operating the telephone » Fig. 85.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation (hands-free system) at the factory.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons and the symbols and on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/wheel	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	Accept call, terminate call, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of selected numbers
1	Press button for a long period of time	Reject call, last number dialled[a], switch voice control on/off[b]
2	Press briefly	Switch on/off voice control
2	Turn upwards	Increase the volume
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume

[a] Valid for vehicles with the Amundsen+ navigation system.
[b] Valid for vehicles without the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Inserting the mobile phone and adapter

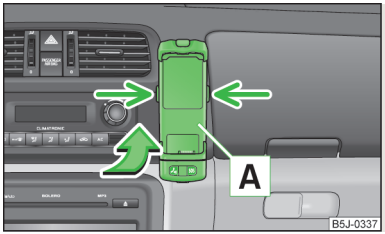

Fig. 86
Universal telephone preinstallation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

Only one telephone mount is factory-fitted. An adapter for the mobile phone can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Install

› First of all push the adapter A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 86 up to the stop into the mount. Then press the adapter slightly downwards, until it locks securely into position.
› Insert the mobile phone into the adapter A (as specified in the instructions from the manufacturer of the adapter).

Removing

› Simultaneously press the locks on the mount » Fig. 86 and remove the adapter with the mobile phone.

CAUTION

Taking the mobile phone out of the adapter during the call can lead to interruption of the connection. When removing the mobile phone, the connection to the factory-fitted antenna is interrupted, which reduces the quality of the transmitting and receiving signal. The charging of the mobile phone battery is also interrupted.

Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter

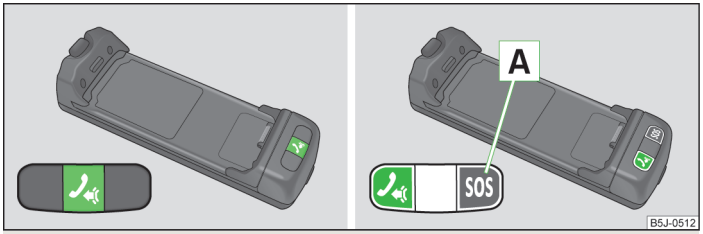

Fig. 87 **Principle sketch: Adapter with one button/adapter with two buttons**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

Function overview of the » Fig. 87 (PTT - "push to talk") button on the adapter:
› Switch on/off voice control;
› Accept/end a call.

Some adapters include the button in addition to the button SOS A » Fig. 87. After pressing this button for 2 seconds, the number 112 (Emergency call) is dialled.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the control unit has completed the search.
› Select your mobile phone from the menu of the units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
› After terminating the connection, confirm the creation of a new user profile in the information display.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be reestablished for 3 minutes in the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› Through the **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu item in the information display.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[2]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting the user in the **Bluetooth** - **User** menu item in the information display.

Solving connection problems

Check the operating status of the mobile phone if the system reports **No paired phone found**.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Note

▪ If a suitable adapter is available for your mobile phone, only use your mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount so that the radiation in the vehicle drops to a minimum.
▪ Placing the mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount ensures optimum sending and receiving power.

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN is either displayed or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

Symbols in the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

Symbol	Importance
	Charge status of the phone battery[a]
	Signal strength[a]
	a phone is connected to the hands-free system.
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices.
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system.

[a] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Operate the telephone via the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 84.

The following menu points can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**[1]
- **Call register**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**[1]
- **Set-up**[2]
- **Back**

Phone book
The **Phone book** lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the SIM card in the phone.

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+,✳, #** and the **Cancel, Call, Delete** functions.

Call register

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed calls**
- **Dialled numbers**
- **Received calls**

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item you can set the number of the voice mailbox[1] and then dial the number.

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu.
- **User** - overview of the stored users
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the phone for other devices
- **Media Player**
  - **Active device**
  - **Paired devices**
  - **Search**
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu.
- **Phone book**
  - **Update**[1]
  - **List**
    - **Surname**
    - **First name**
- **Ring tone**

Back
Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

[1] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.
[2] This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue 89
Voice commands 89

Dialogue

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 89.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.

› Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
› Avoid a bad pronunciation.
› Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
› It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the tone of your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
› During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
› Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number

The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Switching on voice control

› by briefly pressing the button on the adapter» Fig. 87 on page 86;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multi-function steering wheel » page 85, *Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel*.

Switching off voice control

If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played will have to be stopped:

› by briefly pressing the button on the adapter;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:

› with the **CANCEL** voice command;
› by pressing the button on the adapter;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note

- The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control or a phone mount and adapter.

Voice commands

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 89.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.

Voice command	Action
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**" and a new entry can be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd error the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice entry for the contact in the menu **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record**.

Your own voice entry can also be saved using the voice control in the menu **FURTHER OPTIONS**.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth® 90
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel 91
AUX-IN and MDI inputs 91

Music playback via Bluetooth®

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 90.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from the devices such as MP3 player, mobile phone or notebook.

To ensure the music can be played back via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 89, *Voice commands*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

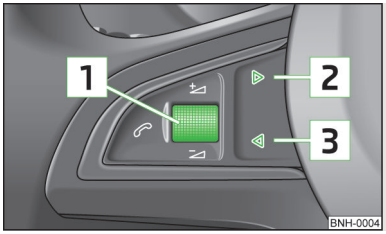

Fig. 88
Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 90.

The multifunction steering wheel comprises buttons for setting the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 88.

Button/wheel	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD/MP3/Navigation
1	Press briefly	Switch off/on tone	
1	Press button for a long period of time	Switch the unit on/off	
1	Turn upwards	Increase the volume	
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume	
2	Press briefly	Switch to the next stored radio station Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the next title
2	Press button for a long period of time	Search forwards	Fast forward
3	Press briefly	Switch to the previous stored radio station Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the previous title
3	Press button for a long period of time	Search backwards	Fast rewind

Note

- The functions of button 1 are different for vehicles fitted with a universal telephone preinstallation GSM II » page 85.
- The loudspeakers in the vehicle are adjusted to the power output of the radio and navigation system of 4x20°W.

AUX-IN and MDI inputs

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 90.

The AUX-IN input is located below the front armrest and is marked with AUX.

The MDI input is located beneath the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

The AUX-IN and MDI inputs are used to connect external audio sources (e.g. iPod or mp3 player) and to play back music from these devices via the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

For a description of use, refer to the operating instructions for the relevant radio or navigation system.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position 94
Electrohydraulic power steering 94
Electronic immobiliser 95
Ignition lock 95
Starting the engine 95
Stopping the engine 95

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance 1 » Fig. 89 on page 94between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – risk of accident!
- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.

WARNING (Continued)

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position 2 » Fig. 90 on page 95 (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, this could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel – risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children could otherwise start the engine for example – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) – risk to life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

CAUTION

- You will place great stresses on the power steering system if the steering is turned to full lock when the vehicle is stationary. Turning the steering to full lock in such a situation will be accompanied by noises. Never leave the steering wheel at full lock for more than 15 seconds when the engine is running - there is a risk of damaging the power steering.
- The starter may only be operated when the engine is not running. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts otherwise the starter could be damaged.
- If the engine also does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or the control unit for the glow plug system or glow plug system relay and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 187, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!

▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 183, *Jump-starting*.
▪ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

▪ The engine can only be started with the correctly coded original key.
▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.
▪ If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, the fuse for the fuel pump may have a fault. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 187, *Fuses*, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

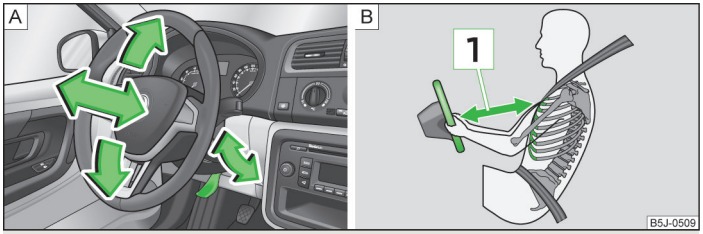

Fig. 89 **Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below the steering column/safe distance to the steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 50, *Front seats*.
› Pull the lever below the steering wheel down » Fig. 89 - A.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

Electrohydraulic power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (vehicle being towed in). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

If there is a fault in the power steering, the warning light then lights up in the instrument cluster » page 17, *Warning lights*.

Electronic immobiliser

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Immobilizer active.

Ignition lock

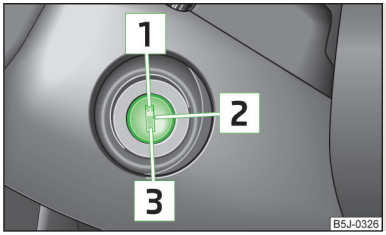

Fig. 90
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

Petrol engines

1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Diesel engines

1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot or can only be turned with difficulty into the position 2 » Fig. 90, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The preglow warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. The engine should be started immediately after the preglow warning light goes out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Before starting the engine, place the gearshift lever into neutral or place the selector lever in the position **P** or **N** and firmly put on the handbrake.
› Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal, switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 90 on page 95 and start 3 - do not operate the accelerator. Depress the clutch pedal until the engine starts.
› Let go of the key as soon as the engine starts. After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.
› If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, abort the start-up process and turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.
› Release the handbrake before starting off.

Stopping the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position 1 » Fig. 90 on page 95.

Braking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking 96
Handbrake 97

WARNING

- The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- Depress the clutch pedal when stopping or braking a vehicle with a petrol engine and manual transmission in the low rev range. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired – risk of accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system could be impaired – there is the risk of an accident.
- Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can cause the rear brakes to overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 103.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Note

- If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically. After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.
- Before negotiating a steep downhill section, reduce the speed, shift down into the next lower gear (manual gearbox) or select a lower drive position (automatic gearbox). As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Information on braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted. Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage before the next service appointment.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. If the brake system is not used much or if there is corrosion on the surface, we recommend cleaning the brake discs by firmly applying the brakes from a high speed.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty. Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 18, *Braking system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

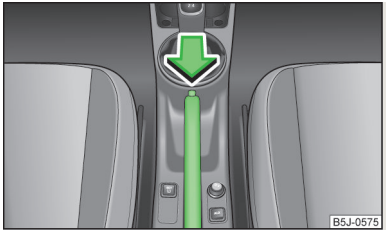

Fig. 91
Centre console: Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Loosening
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 91.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 97
Pedals 98

Manual gear changing

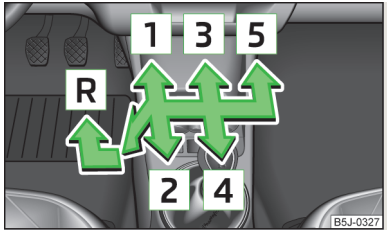

Fig. 92
Shift pattern of the 5-speed manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 97.

Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gear, to prevent excessive wear of the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 11.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

Note

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 97.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use footmats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedals!

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Introductory information 99
Starting-off and driving 99
Selector lever positions 99
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) 100
Selector lever lock 101
Kickdown function 101
Dynamic shift programme 101
Emergency programme 102
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 102

WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the position of the selector lever when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running - risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever into position **R** or **P** when driving - risk of an accident!
- When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary, it is necessary to hold the car with the brake pedal in all the positions of the selector lever (except P and N) since the power transmission is never completely interrupted, also not when the engine is idling - the vehicle creeps.
- The selector lever must be placed into position **P** and the handbrake firmly applied before the bonnet can be opened and work on the running engine can be completed - risk of accident! The safety guidelines must always be observed » page 156, *Engine compartment*.
- If stopping on a hill (downhill gradient), never try to maintain the vehicle stationary with the gear engaged by means of the "accelerator pedal", i.e. by letting the clutch slip. This can lead to overheating of the clutch. If there is a risk of overheating of the clutch due to overload, the clutch is opened automatically and the vehicle rolls backward - risk of accident!
- If you have to stop on a slope, depress and hold the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.
- On a smooth or slippery road surface using the kickdown function can cause the driven wheels to spin - risk of skidding!

CAUTION

- The double clutch on the automatic gearbox DSG is equipped with an overload protection. If the uphill function is used when the vehicle is stationary or driving slowly uphill, the thermal stress on the clutches is increased.
- If the clutch system overheats, the symbol is shown in the information display along with the **Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!** An audible signal sounds as a warning signal. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the symbol disappears - risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

Introductory information

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically. The gearbox can also be switched to **Tiptronic** mode. This mode makes it possible for you to also shift gears manually » page 100.

The engine can only be **started** when the selector lever is in position **P** or **N** . **Move selector lever to position P/N!** appears in the information display or → **P/N** is displayed in the instrument cluster display if the selector lever is not in the **P** or **N** positions when the steering is locked, the ignition is switched off or on, or the engine is started.

At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P** [1].

The handbrake should be applied firmly before the park position **P** is selected when parking.

If the selector lever position **N** is accidentally selected while driving, it is first necessary to release pressure on the accelerator pedal and wait for the idling speed of the engine to be reached before the selector lever can be engaged in the drive position.

Starting-off and driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

Starting off

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the Shiftlock button (button in the selector lever handle), move the selector lever into the desired position » page 99 and then release the Shiftlock button.
› Wait a moment until the gearbox has shifted (a slight engagement nudge can be felt) [2].
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop

› The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads. It is sufficient to hold the vehicle stationary using the foot brake. The engine can, however, be allowed just to idle.

Parking

› Depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Press and Shiftlock button in the selector lever, move the selector lever to **P** and then release the Shiftlock button.

Selector lever positions

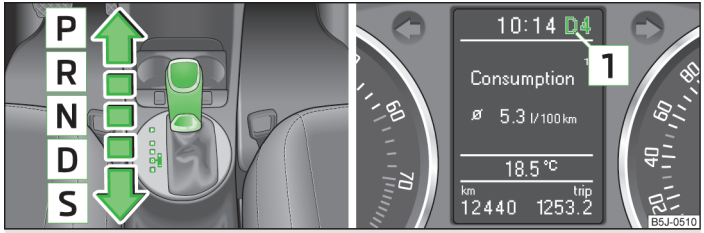

Fig. 93 **Selector lever/information display: Selector lever positions**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

The current selector lever position is indicated in the information display of the instrument cluster 1 » Fig. 93.

P - Parklock

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this position.

The Parklock must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

If you wish to move the selector lever into/out of this position, the Shiftlock button in the selector lever handle and the brake pedal must be actuated at the same time.

[1] Applies to DSG.
[2] Applies to AG.

If the battery is used, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the position **P**.

R - Reverse gear
Reverse gear must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

The brake pedal must be depressed and at the same time the Shiftlock must be pressed, if you wish to obtain the selector lever positions **R**, **P** or **N**.

When the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is in position **R**, the reverse lights will come on.

N - Neutral
The transmission is in Neutral in this position.

The brake pedal must be depressed to move the selector lever out of the position **N** (if the lever is in this position for longer than 2 seconds) into the position **D** or **R** when the vehicle is travelling at less than 5 km/h or the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on.

D - Position for driving forward (normal programme)
When the selector lever is in this position, the forward gears are automatically shifted up and down in line with the engine load, vehicle speed and dynamic shift programme.

The brake pedal must be depressed to move the selector lever into position **D** from **N**when the vehicle is travelling at less than 5 km/h or is stationary.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in mountainous regions or when towing a trailer) it may be beneficial to select the manual shift programme » page 100 for a short time in order to adapt the gearbox ratios manually to the driving situations.

S - Position for driving forward (sports programme)
Shifting up later into a higher gear makes it possible to fully exploit the power potential of the engine. The gearbox also then shifts down at higher engine speeds as in the position **D**.

The Shiftlock on the selector lever grip must be pressed when moving the selector lever out of the position **D** into the position **S**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

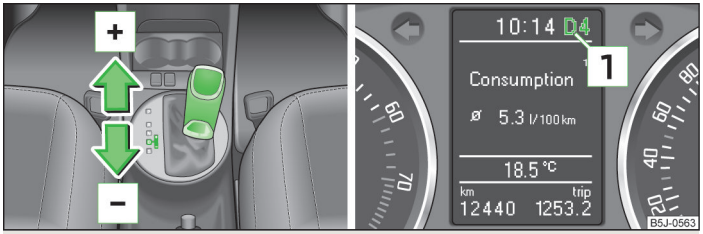

Fig. 94 **Selector lever/information display: Selector lever positions**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 11.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D**. The selector lever position you have engaged appears in the display of the instrument cluster 1 » Fig. 94.

Shifting up gears
› Press the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 94.

Shifting down gears
› Press the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 94.

It is possible to switch to manual shifting when the car is stationary and when driving.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

If you operate the kickdown function, the gearbox shifts into a lower gear in line with the vehicle speed and engine speed.

Note

The kickdown function is also available when manually shifting gears.

Selector lever lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

Automatic selector lever lock
With the ignition on, the selector lever is locked when it is in the positions **P** and **N**. The brake pedal must be depressed to move the selector lever out of this position. The warning light » page 24, *Selector lever lock* illuminates in the instrument cluster as a reminder for the driver when the selector lever is in the positions **P** and **N**.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the **N** position for more than 2 seconds without the brake pedal being pressed.

The selector lever lock is only active if the vehicle is stationary or moving at speed of less than 5 km/hour. The lock is switched off automatically into position **N** when the car is travelling at a higher speed.

Shiftlock button
The Shiftlock button in the handle of selector lever prevents certain selector lever positions being engaged inadvertently. The selector lever lock is cancelled when the Shiftlock button is pressed.

Ignition key withdrawal lock[1)]
After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**. If the ignition key is withdrawn, the selector lever is blocked in position **P**.

Kickdown function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

The kickdown function provides you with maximum acceleration power.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in the desired driving program. This function has precedence over the driving programme and serves for maximum acceleration of the vehicle when exploiting the maximum power potential of the engine without taking into account the current selector lever position (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**). The gearbox shifts down to one or several gears in line with the driving state and the vehicle accelerates. The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

Dynamic shift programme

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

The automatic gearbox of your vehicle is controlled electronically. Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically on the basis of pre-defined driving programmes.

Adopting a **moderate style of driving** will cause the gearbox to select the most economical driving programme. Shifting up into a higher gear as soon as possible and shifting down as late as possible will have a favourable effect on your fuel consumption.

When adopting a **sporty style of driving** with rapid movements of the accelerator pedal combined with sharp acceleration, frequent changes in speed and exploiting the top speed of the car, the gearbox will adjust to this style of driving once the accelerator pedal (kickdown function) is depressed and will shift down earlier, frequently by several gears in comparison to a moderate style of driving.

Selecting the most appropriate driving programme for the particular style of driving is a continuous process. Irrespective of this it is, however, possible to switch or shift down into a dynamic shift programme by depressing the accelerator rapidly. The gearbox shifts down into a lower gear in accordance with the speed,

1) Only valid for some countries.

therefore enabling rapid acceleration (e.g. when overtaking) without the accelerator pedal having to be depressed into the kickdown range. The original programme will be reactivated to match your particular style of driving once the gearbox has shifted up again.

When driving in hilly regions, the gears are selected to match uphill and downhill sections. This avoids the gearbox frequently shifting up and down when negotiating an uphill stretch. When driving downhill, it is possible to shift down into the Tiptronic position, in order to exploit the engine brake torque.

Emergency programme

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

An emergency programme exists in the event of a fault in the system.

The gearbox operates in a corresponding emergency programme if there are functional faults in the gearbox electronics. All of the display elements illuminate or go out.

A functional fault can have the following effect:
› The gearbox only shifts into certain gears;
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used,
› The manual shift programme is switched off in emergency mode.

i Note

If the gearbox has switched to emergency mode, drive to a specialist garage to have the fault rectified.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

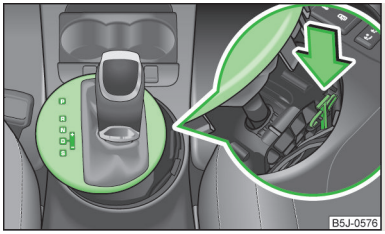

Fig. 95
Selector lever-emergency unlocking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 98.

In case of interruption of the power supply (e.g. flat vehicle battery, defective fuse) or defect of the selector lever lock, the selector lever can no longer be shifted from the position **P** in the normal way and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked in case of emergency.

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.
› Pull up rear cover.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 95.
› Simultaneously press the Shiftlock button in the handle of the selector lever and shift the lever into the position **N** (if the selector lever is shifted back into the position **P**, it is blocked again).

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine 103
New tyres 103
New brake pads 103

New engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 102.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- No full throttle.
- Avoid high engine speeds.
- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres

- **Gradually** increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily **high engine speeds** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the start of the red scale area of the revolutions counter. On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. During acceleration (depressing the accelerator) **exceptionally** high engine speeds are automatically reduced, yet the engine is not protected against too high engine speeds which are caused by incorrectly shifting down the gears resulting in a sudden increase of the engine speeds above the permitted maximum revolutions which can lead to engine damage.

For a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox the converse situation also applies: Do not drive at an engine speed that is too **low**. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 11, *Recommended gear*.

CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature. Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Not driving at unnecessarily high engine revolutions and shifting to a higher gear as early as possible are ways to minimise fuel consumption and operating noise levels and protects the environment.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 102.

New tyres must firstly be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 102.

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead 104
Economical gear changing. 104
Avoiding full throttle 105
Reducing idling 105
Regular maintenance 105
Avoid short distances 106
Checking tyre inflation pressures 106
Avoid unnecessary ballast 106
Saving electricity 106
Environmental compatibility 106

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Your fuel consumption, any pollution of the environmental and the wear-and-tear to the engine, brakes and tyres, depend essentially on three factors:
› your personal style of driving;
› the conditions under which your vehicle is operated;
› technical aspects.

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

Looking ahead

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing.

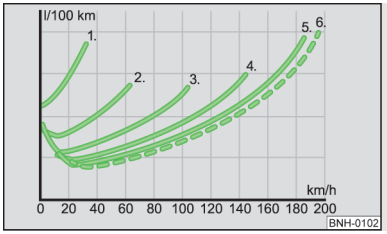

Fig. 96
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox
› Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
› Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2 000 revolutions.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 11, *Recommended gear*.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 96.

Automatic gearbox
› **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kickdown position.
› If the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly on a vehicle fitted with an automatic gearbox, an economic driving programme is automatically selected.

Avoiding full throttle

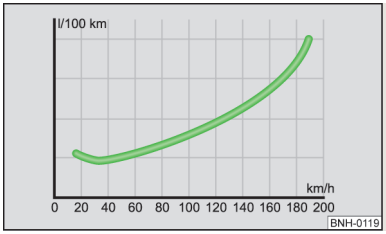

Fig. 97
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Driving more slowly means saving fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The » Fig. 97 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, whereby high engine speeds should be avoided.

Regular maintenance

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Also check the **oil level** when refuelling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Avoid short distances

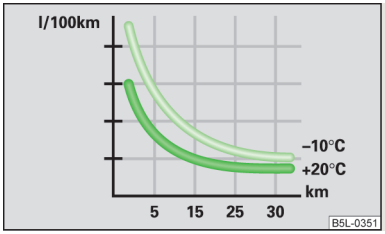

Fig. 98
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 98 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C. Your vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in the winter than in the summer.

Checking tyre inflation pressures

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. The rolling resistance will be increased if the tyre filling pressure is too low. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoid unnecessary ballast

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. It is worth checking the boot to avoid transporting any unnecessary ballast.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 103.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.

› Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.
› Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
› Reduced noise.

Choice of materials
› Extensive use of recyclable material.
› Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
› No cadmium.
› No asbestos.
› Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture
› Solvent-free cavity protection.
› Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
› The use of solvent-free adhesives.
› No CFCs used in the production process.
› Without use of mercury.
› Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars
ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always[1] be returned. In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information 107
Driving through water on streets 108

General information

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.
› When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
› When driving over kerbs.
› When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is required for vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on streets

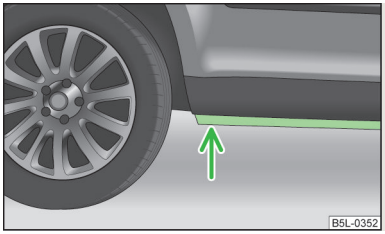

Fig. 99
Driving through water

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 107.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads):

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must fit around the strut on the side member as a maximum » Fig. 99;
› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed. At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle;
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off;
› Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 114, *START/STOP*.

WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol 108
Headlights 109

In certain countries it is also possible that the ŠKODA Service Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 155, *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 110
Antilock Braking System (ABS) 111
Traction Control System (ASR) 111
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 111

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 151, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.

Note

If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL also do not work. An ABS fault is indicated with the warning light » page 21.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 110.

The ESC system helps improve control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. The risk of skidding is reduced and your car thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface.

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. In the event of deviations, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **electronic stabilisation control (ESC)**:
- Antilock brake system (ABS),
- Traction control (TCS),
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)
- Hill Hold Control (HHC).

It is not possible to deactivate ESC. Only the ASR can be switched off by utilising the symbol key » Fig. 100 on page 111. The ASR control light comes on in the instrument cluster when the ASR is switched off.

In the event of an ESC fault, the ESC warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 20.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)
The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

The HBA function is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)
When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active on slopes of 5% and steeper, provided that the driver's door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 110.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (ASR)



Fig. 100
TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 110.

If the wheels are slipping, the ASR system adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. It may be advisable to switch off the system in certain exceptional circumstances, such as:
› when driving with snow chains;
› when driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface;
› when it is necessary to "rock a vehicle free" when it has got stuck.

Ensure the TCS is switched on again afterwards.

You can switch the ASR off and on again as you wish by pressing the symbol key » Fig. 100 . The ASR control light comes on in the instrument cluster when the ASR is switched off.

The TCS warning light » page 24 lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the TCS.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 110.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

In the event of severe stresses, the EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 112

WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they are not recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signals from the parking aid. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the parking aid. Under unfavourable conditions, objects or people may not be recognised.

CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the parking aid to operate properly.

Note

Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

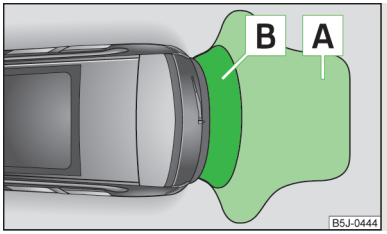

Fig. 101
Parking aid: Range of sensors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 112.

The parking aid determines the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle with the aid of ultrasound sensors. The sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

Range of sensors
The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 160 cm from the obstacle (area A » Fig. 101). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm (area B) - danger area. **You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!**

On vehicles with a factory-fitted radio or navigation system, the distance to the obstacle is simultaneously graphically illustrated on the display, refer to the operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the border of the danger area starts (continuous tone) 5 cm further away from the vehicle. The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the rear sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer.

Activating/deactivating the parking aid
The parking aid is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The parking aid is deactivated by removing the reverse gear.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storing a speed 113
Changing a stored speed 113
Switching off the cruise control system temporarily 114
Switching off the cruise control system completely 114

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is activated.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) - risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. Therefore, shift to a lower gear in good time or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged.
- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**.
- The Cruise Control System may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or a similar event takes place.

Storing a speed

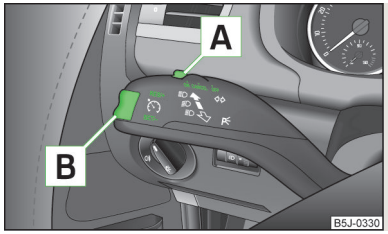

Fig. 102
Operating lever: Operating the cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

Storing a speed

› Turn the switch A » Fig. 102 into the **ON** position.
› After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button B into the **SET** position.

After you have released the rocker button B out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing a stored speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

› Depress the accelerator to increase the speed.
› Release the accelerator to reduce the speed back down to the preset speed.

However, if the saved speed is exceeded by more than 10 km/h for a period of more than 5 minutes by depressing the accelerator, the stored speed is deleted from the memory. The speed must then be saved again.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button B

› Press the rocker button B » Fig. 102 on page 113 into the **RES** position.
› The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **RES** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed

› The stored speed can be **reduced** by pressing the rocker button B » Fig. 102 on page 113 into the position **SET**.
› The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
› If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. The speed must then be stored again by pressing the rocker button B in the position **SET** after increasing the speed of the vehicle to more than 25 km/h.

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system.

Switching off the cruise control system temporarily

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

The cruise control system is **temporarily switched off** by pressing the switch A » Fig. 102 on page 113 into the spring-tensioned position **CANCEL** or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly press the rocker button B into the position **RES** to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

Switching off the cruise control system completely

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

› Turn the switch A » Fig. 102 on page 113 into the **OFF** position.

START/STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 115

WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system when driving through water » page 108.

Note

- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the Climatronic is running in automatic mode, under certain conditions, the engine may not switch off automatically.

Function

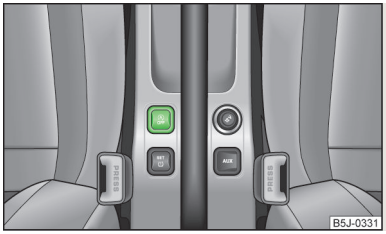

Fig. 103
Centre console: Button for the START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO_2 emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

Information regarding the current state of the START-STOP system is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

Automatic engine shut down (stop phase)
› Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
› Take the vehicle out of gear.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic renewed engine restart (start phase).
› Depress the clutch pedal.

Switching the START-STOP system on and off
The START/STOP system can be switched on/off by pressing the button. » Fig. 103

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

If the vehicle is in the stop phase when manually switching off the system, the engine starts immediately.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing. The general conditions for the proper functioning of the START-STOP system are listed in the following overview.

Conditions that must be completely met for automatic engine switch-off (stop phase)
› The gearshift lever is in Neutral.
› The clutch pedal is not depressed.
› The driver has fastened the seat belt.
› The driver's door is closed.
› The bonnet is closed.
› The vehicle is at a standstill.
› The factory-fitted towing device is not electrically connected to a trailer.
› The engine is at operating temperature.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
› The stationary vehicle is not on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
› The engine speed is less than 1 200 rpm.
› The temperature of the vehicle battery is not too low or too high.
› There is sufficient pressure in the braking system.
› The difference between the outdoor- and the set temperature in the interior is not too great.
› The vehicle speed since the last time the engine was switched off was greater than 3 km/h.
› No cleaning of the diesel particle filter takes place » page 22.
› The front wheels are not turned excessively (the steering angle is less than 3/4 of a steering wheel revolution).

The automatic re-start (start phase) takes place in each of the following interventions:
› The clutch is depressed.
› The max./min. temperature is set.
› The defrost function for the windscreen is switched on.
› A high blower stage has been selected.
› The START STOP button is pressed.

The automatic re-start takes place in each of the following situations, without intervention from the driver:
› The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 3 km/h.
› The difference between the outdoor- and the set temperature in the interior is too great.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is not sufficient.
› There is insufficient pressure in the braking system.

If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine must be started manually with the key. The following messages in the instrument cluster display must be observed.

Messages in the instrument cluster display (valid for vehicles without Information display)

ERROR START-STOP	Error in the START-STOP system
START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE	Automatic engine shut down is not possible.
START STOP ACTIVE	Automatic engine shut down (stop phase)
SWITCH OFF IGNITION	Switch off the ignition.
START MANUALLY	Start the engine manually.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 117
Adjusting the ready position 118
Fitting the ball head 118
Check proper fitting 119
Removing the ball head 119
Use and care 120

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with towing equipment or is fitted with towing equipment from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg/h**.

WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- Do not use the ball head if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Never release the ball head while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Take care with the ball head to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

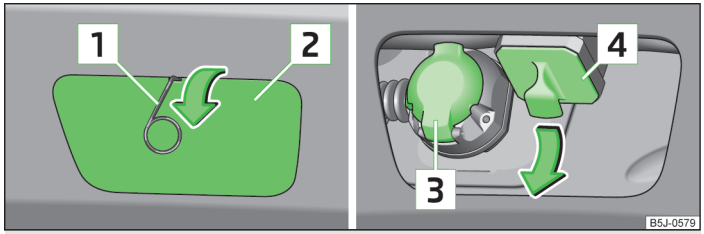

Fig. 104 **Remove the cover flap: on the rear bumper / for the coupling shaft**

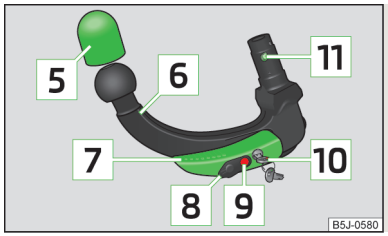

Fig. 105
Ball head

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 117.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment » page 177, *Vehicle tool kit*.

Image description » Fig. 104 and » Fig. 105

1 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
2 Cover in the rear bumper
3 13-pin power socket
4 Cover for the mounting recess
5 Dust cap
6 Ball head
7 Operating lever

8 Lock cap
9 Release pin
10 Key
11 Locking ball

Note

- The tool for removing the wheel trim is part of the vehicle tool kit » page 177 .
- If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

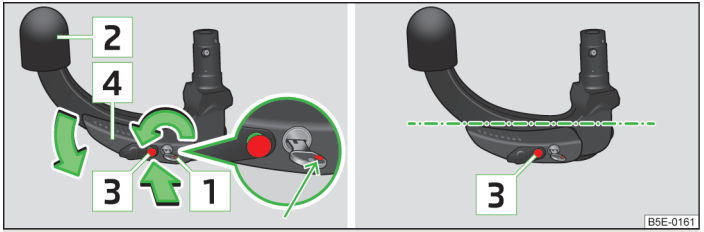

Fig. 106 **Setting the ready position/ready position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 117.

Always adjust the ball head to the correct position before fitting.

› Turn the key so that its red mark 1 » Fig. 106 is visible.
› Grip the ball head below the protective cap 2.
› Press the release pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The lever remains locked in this position.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Fitting the ball head

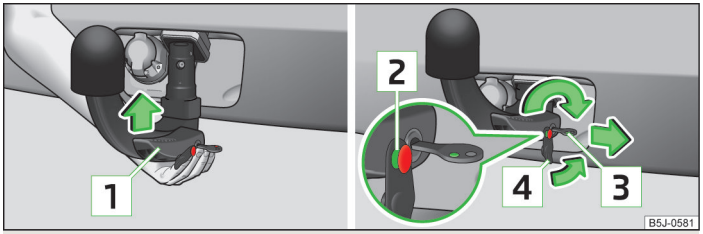

Fig. 107 **Insert the ball head/lock the lock, and put the lock cover on**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 117.

› Remove the cover in the rear bumper 2 » Fig. 104 on page 117 in the direction of the arrow using the tool for removing the wheel trims.
› Pull off the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 104 on page 117 in the direction of the arrow » !.
› Adjust the ball head to the ready position » page 118.
› Grip the ball head **from underneath** » Fig. 107 and insert into the mounting recess until it is heard to latch » !.

Lever 1 » Fig. 107 **automatically** turns upwards and the release pin 2 pops out (its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the lever 1 does not turn automatically, or if the release pin 2 does not pop out, remove the ball head from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the tapered surfaces on the ball head and the mounting recess.

› Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key by 180° to the right (see green marking 3 is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
› Push the cap 4 » Fig. 107 onto the lock in the direction of the arrow » !.
› Check the ball head for secure mounting » page 119.

WARNING

- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess - there is a risk of hand injury.
- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head – there is a risk of finger injury.
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – there is a risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.
- After removing the ball head, always place the cap on the mounting recess.
- Remove the cover from the rear bumper with care - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper and the cap.

Note

After removing cover 2 and cap 4 » Fig. 104 on page 117 store them in a suitable place in the luggage compartment.

Check proper fitting

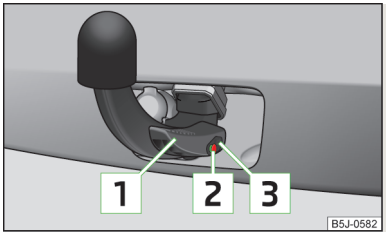

Fig. 108
Check that the ball head is fitted properly

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 117.

Check that the ball head is fitted properly each time before use.

Check the following points.

✓ The lever 1 is at the top » Fig. 108.
✓ The release pin 2 is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed.
✓ The cap 3 is on the lock of the operating lever.
✓ The ball head does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".

WARNING

Do not use the towing equipment unless the ball head was properly locked.

Removing the ball head

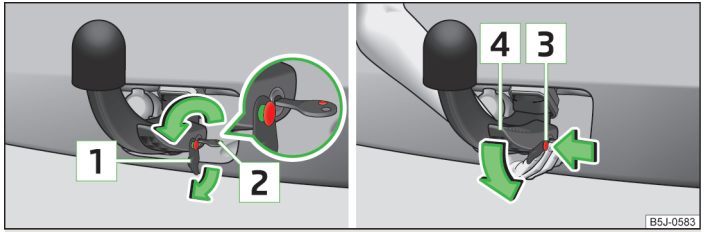

Fig. 109 **Unlock the operating lever of the ball head/removing the ball head**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 117.

› Remove the cap 1 » Fig. 109 from the lock on the ball head in the direction of the arrow.
› Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 180° to the left so that the red marking 2 becomes visible.
› Grasp the ball head from underneath.
› Press the release pin 3 as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever 4 downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball head latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Fit the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 104 on page 117 in the opposite direction to the arrow.
› Offer up the cap to the rear bumper 2 » Fig. 104 on page 117 aligning it with "check mark" in the lower bumper area.
› Push the cap in first on the left and right and then at the top.

WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage in a sudden braking manoeuvre and put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

▪ If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
▪ Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – there is a risk of damaging the key.
▪ Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

Note

▪ We recommend that you put the protective cap on the ball before removing the ball head.
▪ Clean any dirt from the ball head before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 117.

Close the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Apply a suitable grease where necessary.

Fit the protective cap when stowing away the ball head to protect the luggage compartment against dirt.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer 120
Towing a trailer 121
Anti-theft alarm system 122

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 120.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 170, *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 195, *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing equipment are merely test data for the towing equipment. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – there is the risk of an accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly affect the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – there is the risk of an accident and serious injury.

Towing a trailer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 120.

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle can be lifted when a trailer is being towed and the headlights can dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlight setting on the headlight range control » page 39, *Headlight beam adjustment*.

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light in the instrument cluster starts to flash. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 163, *Checking the coolant level*.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 19, *Coolant temperature, coolant level*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » page 188.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your car inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.

Anti-theft alarm system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 120.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 32.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing equipment.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment 123
Before setting off 123
What influences the driving safety? 124

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiters for the front seats.
› Belt tensioners for the front seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Front side airbags.
› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height.
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Before setting off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

› Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
› Check the tyre inflation pressure.
› Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
› Secure all items of luggage » page 55.
› Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
› Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.
› Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
› Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 139, *Transporting children safely*.
› Adopt the correct seated position » page 124. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » page 127, *Using seat belts*.

What influences the driving safety?

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

› Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
› Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
› Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
› Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
› Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Correct seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver ____ 125
Correct seated position for the front passenger ____ 125
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats ____ 125
Examples of incorrect seated positions ____ 125

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
- The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions.
- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the driver

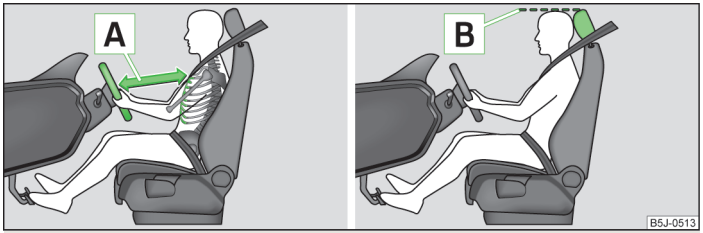

Fig. 110 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct head restraint position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 124.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A » Fig. 110 between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm.
› Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
› Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head B .
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 127, *Using seat belts*.

Driver seat adjustment » page 51.

Correct seated position for the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 124.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

› Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
› Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head B » Fig. 110 on page 125 » page 125.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 127, *Using seat belts*.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 136, *Deactivating airbags*.

Front passenger adjustment » page 51, *Adjusting the front seats*.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 124.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

› Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head B » Fig. 110 on page 125 » page 125.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 127, *Using seat belts*.
› Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 139, *Transporting children safely*.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 124.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.
- Do not stand up.
- Do not stand on the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats.
- Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not lie on the rear seats.
- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your feet out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction



Fig. 111
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision ____ 128
Fastening and unfastening seat belts ____ 129
Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats ____ 130
Seat belt for the rear middle seat ____ 130

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 111.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 139, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 129, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 124, *Correct seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct routing of the seat belt.
- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt when closing the door.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.
- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 53.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper maintenance of the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 151.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

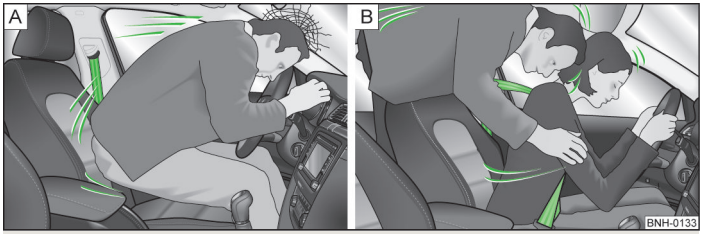

Fig. 112 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear passenger without a fastened seat belt**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » Fig. 112 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front » Fig. 112 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

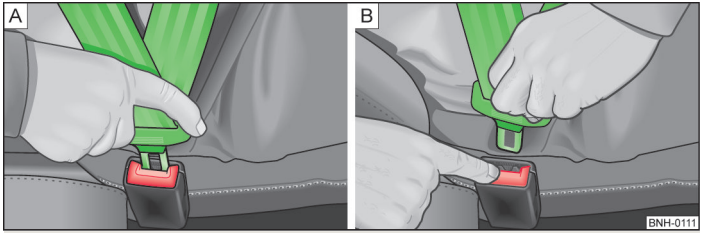

Fig. 113 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

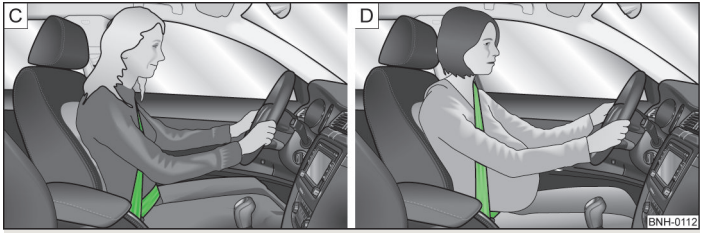

Fig. 114 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 52.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat until audibly it clicks into place » Fig. 113 - A.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 114 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

On expectant mothers, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 114 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 113 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats

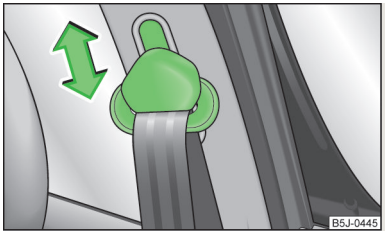

Fig. 115
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 115.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Seat belt for the rear middle seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

The seat belt for the rear middle seat is anchored in the area of the boot on the left side of the headliner.

Fasten

› Pull the belt with both lock tongues out of the headliner mount.
› Insert the lock tongue at the end of the belt into the belt buckle on the left side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull the second lock tongue, which is moveable on the seat belt, over the chest and insert it into the belt buckle on the right side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull on the seat belt to check that both lock tongues are securely engaged in the locks.

The belt tongues for the rear middle seat are shaped differently so that they only fit into the correct belt buckle. If you are not able to insert a lock tongue into the wrong belt lock you probably tried to put it into the wrong buckle.

Release

› Take off the safety belt in the reverse order to how you fasten it.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the webbing rolls up easily, the seat belt is not twisted and the trim panel is not damaged.

! WARNING

- After releasing the seat belt, hold it tight and let it slowly reel up until both locking tongues lock into the headliner mounting and are secured with a magnet - risk of injury.
- Never unlock both lock tongues simultaneously.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels 130
Belt tensioners 131

Inertia reels

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA Partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 132
Airbag deployment 132

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 124, *Correct seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 23.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.
- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 134.
- Side airbags » page 135.
- Head airbags » page 136.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 23.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 137.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 137.

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
- the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- the hazard warning light is switched on;
- all the doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 134
Side airbags 135
Head airbags 136

Front airbags

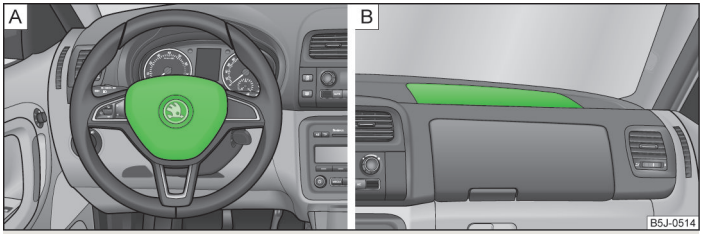

Fig. 116 **Driver's airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel**

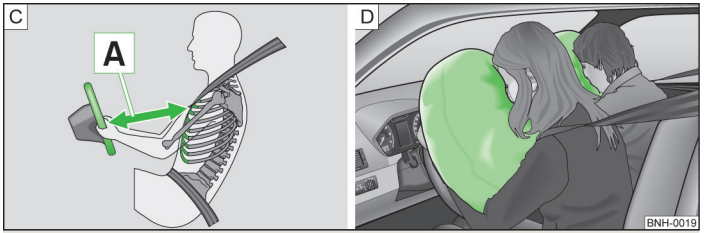

Fig. 117 **Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 133.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 116 – A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the stowage compartment » Fig. 116 – B.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 117 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Correct seated position
- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 117. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children
- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 136, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Side airbags

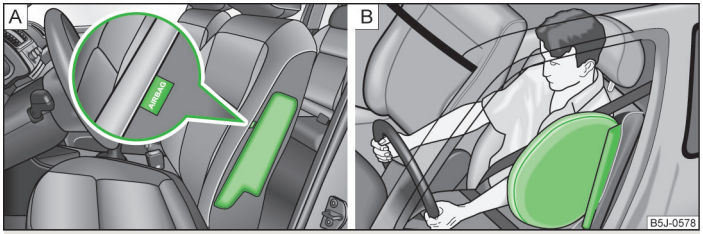

Fig. 118 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 133.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 118 – A.

When the side airbags » Fig. 118 - B are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 140, *Child safety and side airbag*.

WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 139, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

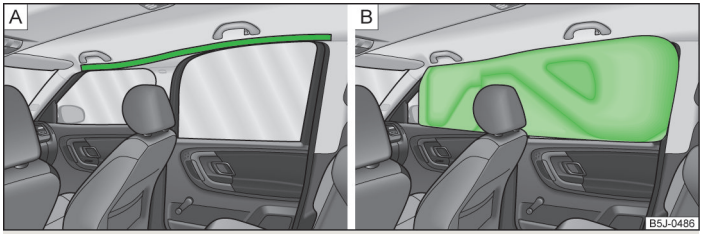

Fig. 119 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 133.

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 119 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar » Fig. 119 - B.

Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 151.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 137
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 137

Deactivating airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

› If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 139, *Transporting children safely*.
› If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
› If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
› If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 137.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system
The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment
› The warning light lights up for approx. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment
› The warning light lights up for approx. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.
› The warning light OFF 3 » Fig. 120 on page 137 turns off after switching on the ignition.

Note

▪ The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
▪ A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Fig. 120 **Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 120 **OFF**.
› After switching on the ignition, check whether the warning light 3 OFF [1] is illuminated in writing **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** is illuminated in the centre panel.

Switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 120 **ON**.
› After switching on the ignition, check whether the warning light 3 OFF is not illuminated in writing **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** is not illuminated in the centre panel.

[1] The warning light OFF comes on for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, goes out for about 1 second and then comes on again.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning light OFF flashes, then the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat ____ 140
Child safety and side airbag ____ 140
Classification of child seats ____ 141
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt ____ 141

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are at increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or are not correctly positioned when the vehicle is moving, e.g. an incorrect seated position. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 140, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.

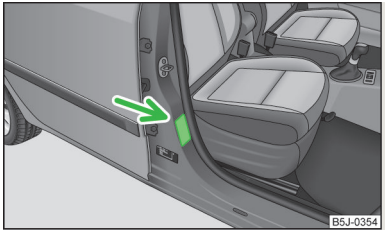

Fig. 121
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 139.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 136, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the B column on the front passenger side » Fig. 121. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. In some countries, the sticker is affixed to the front passenger sun visor.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Child safety and side airbag

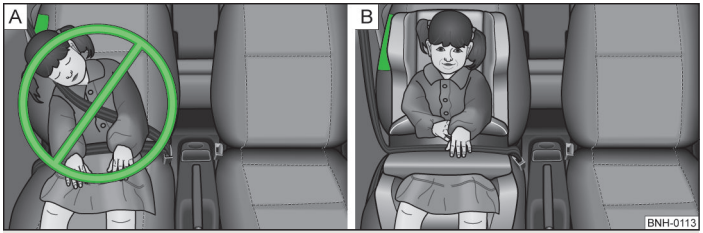

Fig. 122 **Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/child properly protected by child seat**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 139.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 122 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag so that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 122 - B.

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 139.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0 +	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 139.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system 141
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system 142
Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system 143

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system

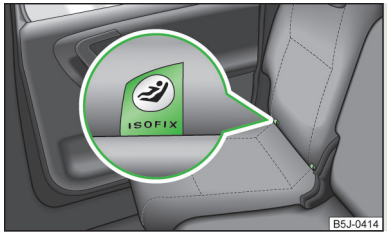

Fig. 123
Rear seat: ISOFIX

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 141.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 123.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk to life!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 141.

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size category of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 to 10 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
0+ to 13 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU** **IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The category "Semi-Universal" means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system

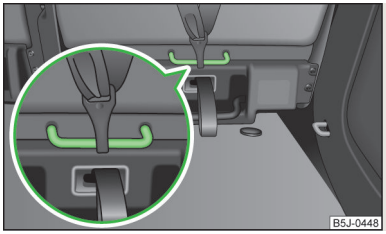

Fig. 124
Rear seat: TOP TETHER

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 141.

The locking eyes for attaching the belt to a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 124.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle

Washing your car

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand ____ 144
Automatic car wash systems ____ 144
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner ____ 145

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:
- Frequency of use.
- Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
- Season.
- Weather conditions.
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 144.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the under body and/or chassis, exhaust system, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - risk of cuts! - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 144.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 144.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 147 .

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork 146
Plastic parts 146
Rubber seals 146
Chrome parts 147
Decorative films 147
Windows and exterior mirrors 147
Headlight lenses 147
Door lock cylinders 148
Cavity protection 148
Wheels 148
Underbody protection 148

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays.**

Preserving the vehicle paintwork
A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing
Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and exterior mirrors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

▪ The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
▪ Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
▪ Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
▪ When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
▪ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- **Never** wipe headlights to dry.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

When driving, it cannot be guaranteed that no damage to the **protective layer** will occur.

We recommend having the protective layer underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 149
Artificial leather and fabric 150
Seat covers 150
Seat belts 151

Regular and proper care helps to ensure efficiency and maintain the **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scent dispensers or air fresheners to the dash panel – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains,** use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather and fabric

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a specific cleaning agent to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

CAUTION

- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Electrically heated seats
Do not clean the covers **by moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Seat belts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Modifications, repairs and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ŠKODA Service Partners 152
Spoiler 152
Airbags 152

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out all modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 152 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner does not assume any liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We recommend that you only use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts on your vehicle. This will guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *See Service schedule*.

ŠKODA Service Partners

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

The ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Spoiler

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA service partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

Airbags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system will then have to be replaced if the airbag is deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling 154
Unleaded petrol 155
Diesel fuel 155

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 125 on page 154 - B.

WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

▪ Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
▪ Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!

Refuelling

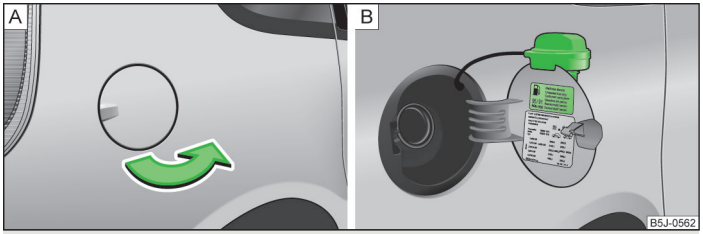

Fig. 125 **Right rear side of the vehicle: Fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

Open fuel filler flap

› Open the fuel filler flap with one hand » Fig. 125 - A.
› Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and unlock it by moving it to the left with the vehicle key.
› Unscrew the filler cap by turning it to the left and place the cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 125 - B.

Closing the filler cap

› Turn the filler cap to the right until it clicks into place.
› Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and lock it by turning the vehicle key to the right and remove the key.
› Close the filler cap.

CAUTION

▪ Before refuelling it is necessary to switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation).
▪ The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **55 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 228** (in Germany: **standard DIN 51626-1** or **E10** for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON and **91** RON or **DIN 51626-2** or **E5** for unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON and **98** RON).

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 95/91 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol **91** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91** RON if petrol with the octane rating **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number
Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating**91** RON of unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Fuel additives
Only use unleaded petrol, which complies with the standard EN 228 (in Germany: standard DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 91 RON or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 98 RON), as these meet all of the requirements for fault-free engine operation. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used.

CAUTION

- All ŠKODA vehicles with petrol engines must only be operated with unleaded petrol. Just filling the tank with leaded petrol once will damage the exhaust system!
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Do not use any LRP (lead replacement petrol) fuels with metal parts – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!
- Do not use any fuels with metal parts – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!
- The use of unsuitable fuel additives can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Diesel fuel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria, **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004** in Russia).

All diesel engines can be operated with diesel fuel with a **maximum** content of 7 % bio-fuel **(B7)**, which complies with the standard **DIN 52638** in Germany (in Austria **C 1590**, in France **EN 590**).

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Fuel additives
Fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar products) must not be added to the diesel fuel.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- Damage caused by using diesel fuel which does not comply with the standards is excluded from the warranty.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Comply with the proscribed oil change intervals.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 158
Engine compartment overview 158
Radiator fan 159
Windscreen washer system 159

WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed before starting work in the engine compartment:
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed when working in the engine compartment.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!

WARNING (Continued)

- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always store the coolant additive securely in its original container, and in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items such as cloths or tools in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.

- Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system – risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep securely out of the reach of children!
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. Therefore, the lock must always be checked after closing the bonnet in order to ensure that it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the locking lever.

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the specials tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage as part of an inspection service.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

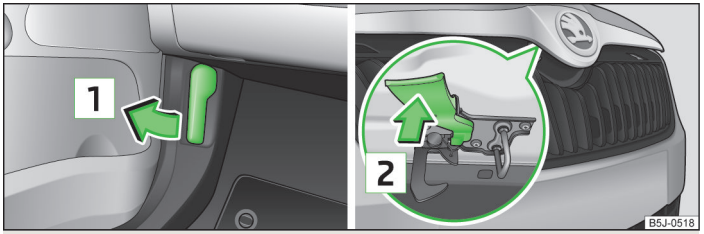

Fig. 126 **Bonnet/radiator grille release lever: Release lever**

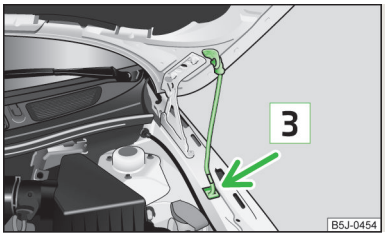

Fig. 127
Securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

Opening

› Pull the release lever under the dash panel 1 » Fig. 126.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 126 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
› Take the bonnet support out of its holder and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support in the opening 3 » Fig. 127 designed for it.

Closing

› Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Press the bonnet support into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.
› Check that the bonnet is closed properly.

Engine compartment overview

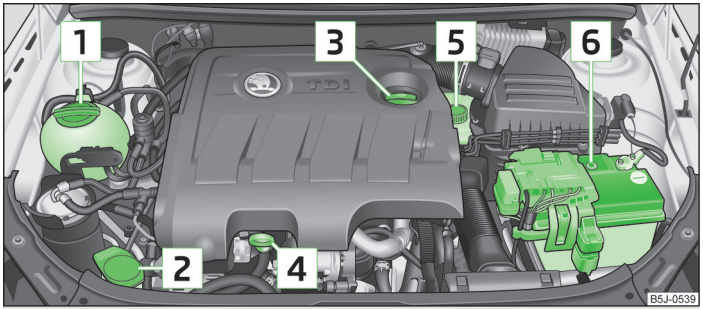

Fig. 128 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	163
2	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	159
3	Engine oil filler opening	161
4	Engine oil dipstick	161
5	Brake fluid reservoir	164
6	Battery (below a cover)	164

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

Windscreen washer system

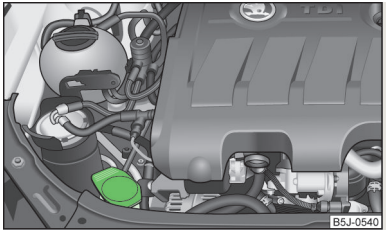

Fig. 129
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system. The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

The **capacity** of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

Antifreeze should always be added to the cleaning water in the winter even if the vehicle is fitted with heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity 160
Checking the oil level 161
Replenishing 161
Changing 161

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 161.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 156.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/51 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	2.8
1.2 Litres/63 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.6
1.2 Litres/77 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.6
1.4 l/63 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3.2

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.2 Litres/55 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 Litres/66 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 Litres/77 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without DPF**

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/51 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	2.8
1.2 Litres/63 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.6
1.2 Litres/77 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.6
1.4 Litres/63 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.2
1.6 Litres/77 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling.

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.2 Litres/55 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 Litres/66 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
1.6 Litres/77 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without DPF**

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

CAUTION

Only the above-mentioned oils can be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals. We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, a maximum of 0.5 l of specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) engine oil can be used to refill once. Other engine oils must not be used - risk of engine damage!

Checking the oil level

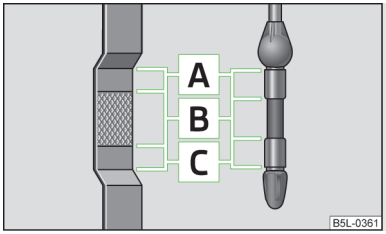

Fig. 130
Dipstick

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine » Fig. 130.

Checking the oil level
› Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil sump and remove the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A
› **No** oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B
› Oil **can** be refilled. It is possible that the oil level may then be within range A after doing this.

Oil level within range C
› Oil **must** be refilled. It is sufficient, once this is done, to keep the oil level within range B.

It is normal for the engine to consume oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time after the fuel tank is filled or after driving for long stretches.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 19, *Engine oil*. In this case, check the oil level with the dipstick, as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

The oil level must on no account extend beyond the range A » Fig. 130. Risk of damaging the exhaust system!

Note

Engine oil specifications » page 160.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

› Check the engine oil level » page 161.
› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 160, *Specifications and capacity*.
› Check the oil level » page 161.
› Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator » page 10, *Service Interval Display*.

Note

If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity 162
Checking the coolant level 163
Replenishing 163

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, we only recommend you use the same antifreeze written on the antifreeze expansion tank » Fig. 131 on page 163.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 156.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- Other coolant additives that do not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 131 on page 163.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

Coolant capacity[1)]

Petrol engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.2 l/51 kW	5.5
1.2 Litres/63 kW TSI	7.7
1.2 Litres/77 kW TSI	7.7
1.4 Litres/63 kW	5.5
1.6 Litres/77 kW	5.5

1) The coolant capacity is approximately 1 Litre greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Diesel engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.2 ltr./55 kW TDI CR DPF	6.6
1.6 Litres/66 kW TDI CR DPF	8.4
1.6 Litres/77 kW TDI CR DPF	8.4

Checking the coolant level

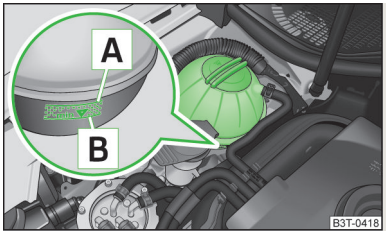

Fig. 131
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet » page 158.
› Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle » Fig. 131. The coolant level when the engine is cold must lie between the B (MIN) and A (MAX) markings. The level may also rise slightly above the A (MAX) marking when the engine is warm.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning light lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 19, *Coolant temperature, coolant level*. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

› Switch off the engine.
› Allow the engine to cool.
› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 131 on page 163 and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Only use new coolant to top up the system.

Do not fill the coolant above the mark A (max.) » Fig. 131 on page 163! Excess coolant heats up and then is forced out of the cooling system through the pressure relief valve in the cap.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level 164
Changing 164

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 156.
- Do not continue your journey, if the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, – risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.

Checking the brake fluid level

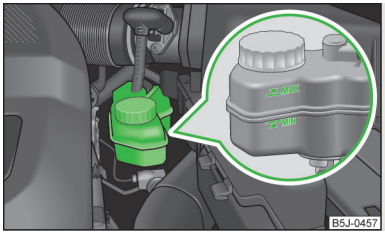

Fig. 132
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 163.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet » page 158.
› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 132. The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

When driving, a slight drop in the fluid level is caused by the wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads, and is therefore perfectly normal.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking. If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light (!) lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 18, (!) *Braking system*.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 163.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment. Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system. The water content also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Battery cover 166
Checking the battery electrolyte level 166
Operation in winter 167
Charging a vehicle battery 167
Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery 167
Replacing the vehicle battery 168
Automatic load deactivation 168

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Importance
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.

Symbol	Importance
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules.
- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, slin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all of the electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (**–**) on the battery.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first disconnect the battery's negative terminal (**–**), followed by the positive terminal (**+**).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first connect the battery's positive terminal (**+**), followed by the negative terminal (**–**). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

▪ If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (–) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
▪ If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Battery cover

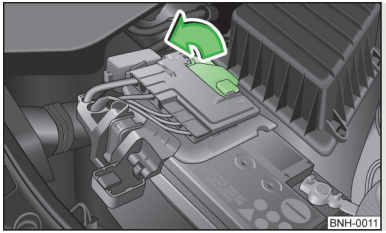

Fig. 133
Vehicle battery: Open up the cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

The battery is located in the engine compartment below a plastic box.

› Push the lid in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 133.
› The installation of the battery cover on the positive terminal side takes place in the reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

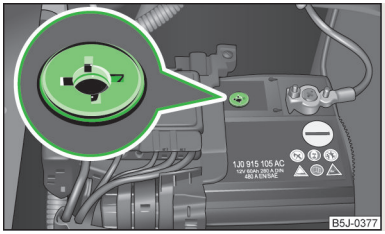

Fig. 134
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High outside temperatures.
› Long daily drives
› After each charge » page 167.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 134, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Note

▪ The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
▪ For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.
▪ Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

Operation in winter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

At low temperatures, the vehicle battery only has part of the initial power output that it has at normal temperatures.

A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked by a specialist garage before the start of winter, and recharged if necessary.

Charging a vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- Only for "quick-charging": Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Only now plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- When charging is completed: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery, if necessary (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not normally necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (as for example from a **mini-charger**). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.**

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is, however, necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "**quick-charging**".

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be quick-charged by a specialist garage.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 184, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free:

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 37
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» *User manual of the radio* or » *user manual of the navigation system*
Setting the clock	» page 11
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 11

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Replacing the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Automatic load deactivation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 164.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following:

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres 170
New tyres 171
Unidirectional tyres 172
Spare wheel 172
Full wheel trim 173
Wheel bolts 173
Hubcaps 174
Tyre pressure monitor 174
Wheel bolts 175

WARNING

- The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.
- For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
- For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *load bearing capacity* for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *speed* for fitted tyres – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction may impair the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding tyre damage and wear.
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Insufficient or excessive inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never apply grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to an insufficient tightening torque, the rims may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- If the wheel bolts are handled incorrectly, the wheel may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.
- Only use the spare wheel for as long as is necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel attached.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 172, *Spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

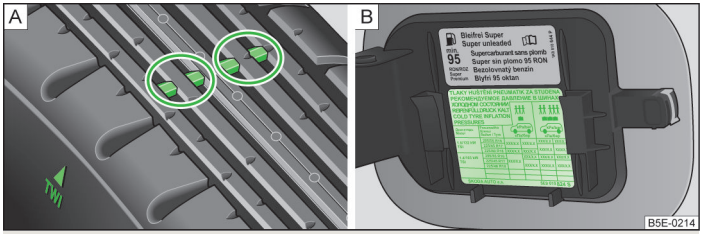

Fig. 135 **Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre inflation pressures**

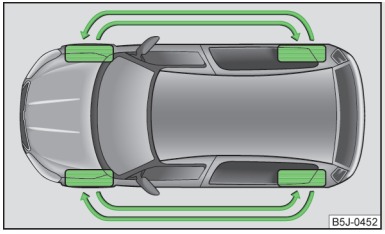

Fig. 136
Replacing wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the life cycle of your tyres.

Tyre pressure
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre inflation pressures for **tyres** are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 135 – B.

The tyre pressure for the spare wheel should correspond to the highest pressure specified for your vehicle.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a vibration in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

Tyre damage
Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Replacing wheels
If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend replacing the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 136. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

Storing tyres
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. Depending on the make of the tyres, these wear indicators are located at uniform intervals around the circumference of the tyre » Fig. 135 – A. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings
185/65 R 14 86 T

What this means is:

185	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 135 on page 170 - B
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 135 on page 170 - B
R	Code letter for the tyre construction model – **R**adial » Fig. 135 on page 170 - B
14	Diameter of the wheel in inches » Fig. 135 on page 170 - B
86	Load index » !
T	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the *inside*). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

83 487 kg
85 515 kg
87 545 kg

91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

R 170 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:

✓ Increased driving stability.
✓ Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
✓ Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Spare wheel

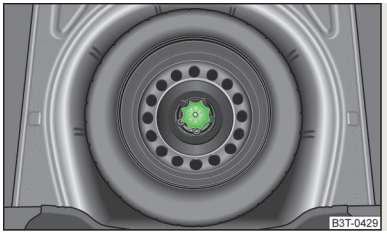

Fig. 137
Boot: Spare wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 137.

Before removing the spare wheel, the box containing the vehicle tool kit must be removed.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » !.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

Temporary spare wheel
A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use this wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure for the standard tyres.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning label attached to the spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

Pulling off

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

- Only apply hand pressure, do not hit the full wheel trim! Avoid heavy impacts when the trim has not yet been inserted into the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- Make sure that the anti-theft wheel bolt is mounted in the bore in the area near the valve » page 180, *Securing wheels against theft*.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts

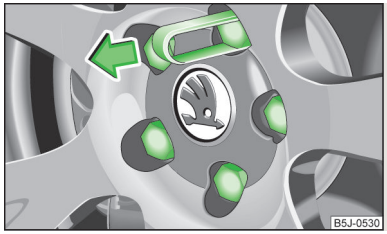

Fig. 138
Remove the cap

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

Pulling off

› Push the extraction pliers sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 138.
› Remove the cap.

Install

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Hubcaps

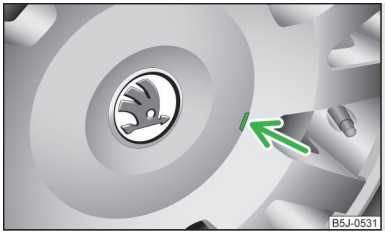

Fig. 139
Pull off the wheel trim cap on light alloy wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

Pulling off

› Carefully remove the wheel trim cap using the wire clamp from the vehicle tool kit » Fig. 139.

Tyre pressure monitor

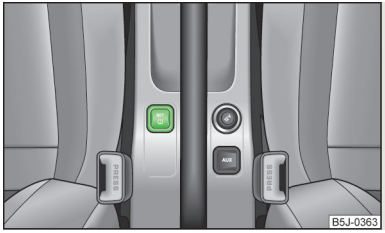

Fig. 140
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

The tyre control display compares the speed and thus the rolling circumference of the individual wheels with the help of the ABS sensors. If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the warning light (!) in the instrument cluster » page 23, (!) *Tyre pressure* and an audible signal sounds.

The rolling circumference of the tyre can change if:

› the tyre inflation pressure is too low;
› the structure of the tyre is damaged;
› the vehicle is loaded on one side;
› the wheels of an axle are loaded heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill);
› snow chains are mounted;
› the temporary spare wheel is mounted;
› one wheel per axle was changed.

Basic setting of the system

After changing the tyre inflation pressure, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. exchanging the wheels between the axles) or when the warning light lights up while driving, a basic setting of the system must be carried out as follows:

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 170, *Service life of tyres*.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the symbol key SET (!) » Fig. 140 for longer than 2 seconds. While pressing the button, the warning light (!) illuminates. At the same time the system memory is erased and the new calibration is started, which is confirmed with an audible signal and then the warning light (!) goes out.
› If the warning light (!) does not go out after the basic setting, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

The warning light (!) is lit

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least one wheel is insufficiently inflated in comparison to the stored basic value, the warning light (!) » ! lights up.

The warning light (!) flashes

If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the fault.

! WARNING

- When the warning light (!) illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. a racy style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads), the warning light (!) may be delayed or does not light up at all.

Note

- The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
- The tyre control display cannot provide a warning in the event of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in the case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10 000 km or once a year.

Wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 169.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels rims, e.g. light alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts with the correct length and dome shape. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres ____ 175
Snow chains ____ 175

Winter tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 175.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

For the sake of the environment

Re-fit the summer tyres at an appropriate time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 175.

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
5J x 14	35 mm	175/70
6J x 14	37 mm	185/65
6J x 15	43 mm	185/55

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **12 mm**.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle ____ 176
fire extinguisher ____ 176
Vehicle tool kit ____ 177

First aid kit and warning triangle

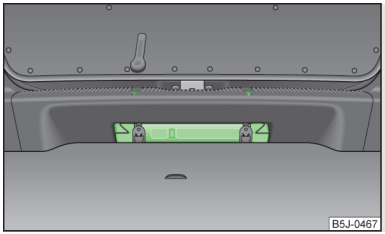

Fig. 141
Placing of the warning triangle

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 176.

A warning triangle with the maximum dimensions 39 x 68 x 450 mm can be attached to the trim panel of the rear wall with rubber straps » Fig. 141.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

fire extinguisher

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 176.

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. National legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

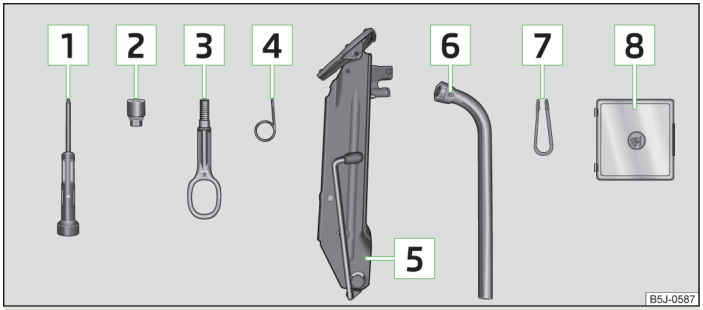

Fig. 142 **Vehicle tool kit**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 176.

The vehicle tool kit and the jack with sticker are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (if included) » Fig. 142.

1 Screwdriver
2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Wire tool for removing the full wheel trims
5 Car jack
6 Wheel wrench
7 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
8 Replacement bulb set

Screw the jack arm fully back into its home position after use to allow you to store it in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances use it to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary work 178
Changing a wheel 178
Follow-up work 179
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 179
Raising the vehicle 180
Securing wheels against theft 180

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 171, *New tyres*.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, this can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt and the adapter.

Note

- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 177.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

› Let **all of the occupants get out.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine.
› Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox into position **P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› If a trailer is connected, uncouple it.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 177 and the **spare wheel** » page 172, *Spare wheel* from the boot.

Changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 177.

› Remove the full wheel trim » page 173 or caps » page 173.
› In the case of light alloy wheel rims remove the wheel trim cap » page 174.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 179.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 180.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Alternately tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (crosswise) and then tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt » page 179.
› Reinstall the wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

WARNING

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 169.

Follow-up work

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 177.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » page 172, *Spare wheel*.
› Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
› Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

! WARNING

▪ If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
▪ Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

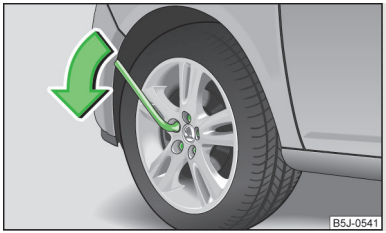

Fig. 143
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 177.

Loosening
› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 143.

Tightening
› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 143 until it is tight.

! WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could loosen itself and fall off – risk of injury!

i Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foodt**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 180.

Raising the vehicle

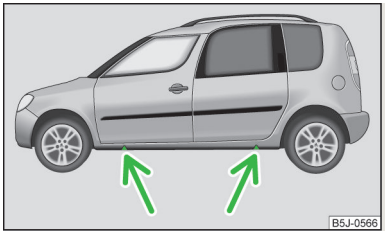

Fig. 144
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

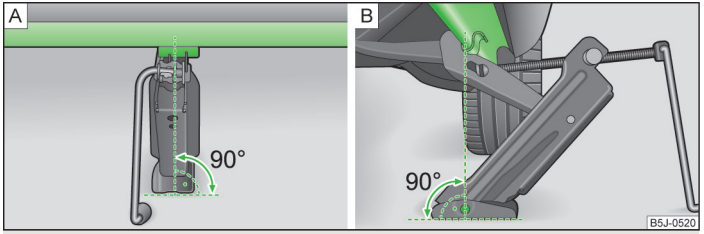

Fig. 145 **Attach lifting jack**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 177.

Position the lifting jack by selecting the jacking point that is closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 144. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point and move it up until its claw is positioned directly below the vertical web of the lower sill.
› Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 145 - B below the embossing in the side surface of the lower sill.
› Ensure that the entire surface of the lifting jack base plate rests on level ground and is located in a vertical position to the area » Fig. 145 where the claw grasps the web.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

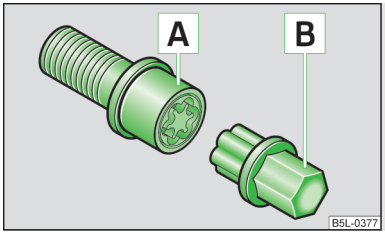

Fig. 146
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 177.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 177, *Vehicle tool kit*.

› Pull off the full wheel trim from the wheel rim or the cap from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
› Insert the adapter B » Fig. 146 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.

i Note

▪ Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from a ŠKODA Service Partner, if necessary.
▪ We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit ____ 181
Preparations for using the breakdown kit ____ 182
Sealing and inflating the tyre ____ 182
Check after 10 minutes' driving ____ 183

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit **is never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

› There is damage to the rim.
› The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
› The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
› There is damage to the tyre wall.
› Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
› If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

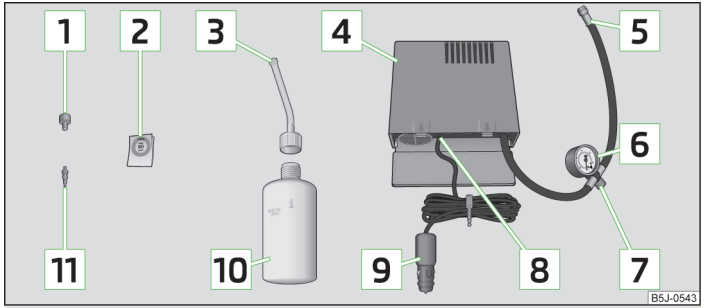

Fig. 147 **Components of the breakdown kit**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit

1 Valve remover
2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
7 Air release valve
8 ON and OFF switch
9 12 volt cable connector
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 1 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core 11.

Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

› Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
› If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
› Let **all of the occupants get out.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 181.
› If a trailer is connected, uncouple it.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 2 » Fig. 147 on page 181 on the dash panel in view of the driver.
› Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 147 on page 181 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 147 on page 181 of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 9 into 12 Volt socket » page 65, *12-volt power outlet*.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 183.

WARNING

- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – there is a risk of fire.
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.
› Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle 184
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system 184

WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 156, *Engine compartment*.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – there is a risk of explosion.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

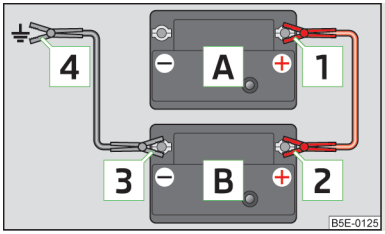

Fig. 148
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 183.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.
- Attach one cable 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 148.
- Attach the other end 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power B.
- Attach one cable 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power B.
- Attach the other end 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine
- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables
Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

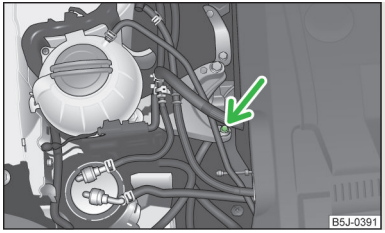

Fig. 149
Engine compartment: Earth

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 183.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable must only be connected to the engine earthing point » Fig. 149.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 185
Rear towing eye 186

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

CAUTION

▪ Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 183, *Jump-starting*.
▪ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
▪ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
▪ To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
▪ While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
▪ Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 185 or » page 186 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 117.
▪ The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Note

▪ We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
▪ Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
▪ When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

Front towing eye

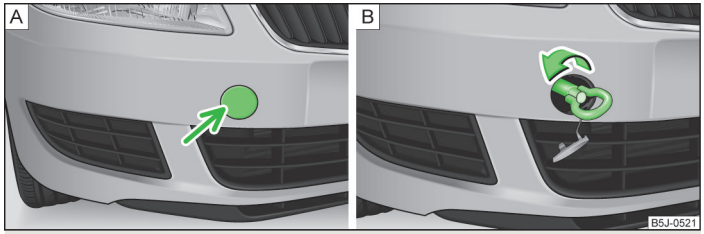

Fig. 150 **Front bumper: Cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

Remove the cap carefully as follows.

› Press on the left half of the cap in the area of the arrow » Fig. 150 - A.
› Remove the cap from the front bumper.
› Screw in the towing eye by hand to the left up to the stop » Fig. 150 - B. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
› In order to reinstall the cap after screwing out the towing eye, insert it in the mounts and then press on the right side of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

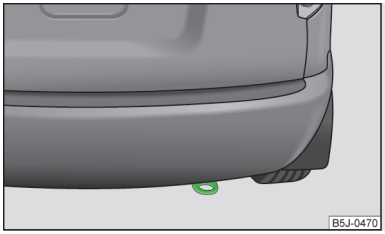

Fig. 151
Rear towing eye

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right » Fig. 151.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel ____ 188
Fuses in the engine compartment ____ 189

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

› Before replacing a fuse, switch off the ignition and the appropriate consumer
› Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 188, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 189, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.
› Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the cover of the fuse box, place it on the relevant fuse and pull it out.
› A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 156, *Engine compartment*.

CAUTION

- Never "repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be multiple power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be multiple power consuming devices for one fuse depending on the vehicle model.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

Fuses in the dash panel



Fig. 152
Underside of the dash panel: Distribution board cover.

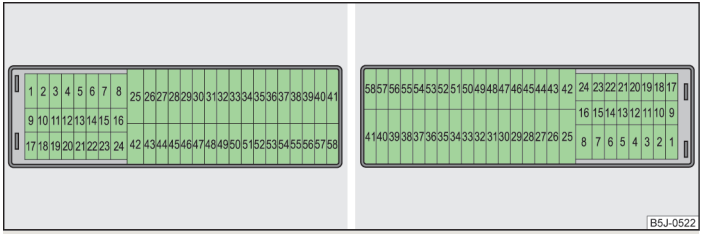

Fig. 153 **Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

› Carefully remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 152.
› After the fuse has been replaced, replace the cover in the dash panel in the opposite direction of the arrow so that the guide lugs are guided into the openings of the dash panel. Close the cover until it clicks into place.

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

No.	Power consumer
1	S-contact
2	START-STOP, air-conditioning system
3	Instrument cluster, headlamp beam adjustment
4	Control unit for ABS, button for START STOP
5	Petrol engine: Speed regulating system
6	Reversing light (manual gearbox)
7	Ignition, engine control unit, automatic gearbox
8	Brake pedal switch, clutch pedal switch
9	Operating controls for the heating, control unit for air conditioning system, parking aid, control unit for cornering lights, radiator fan, washing nozzles
10	Windscreen Wiper and Washer System
11	Mirror adjustment
12	Control unit for trailer detection
13	Control unit for an automatic gearbox
14	Motor for halogen projector headlights with cornering light function
15	PDA navigation system
16	Electro-hydraulic power steering
17	Daytime running lights/radio for vehicles with START-STOP
18	Mirror heater
19	S-contact
20	Alarm
21	Reversing light, fog lights with the function CORNER
22	Operating controls for the heating, control unit for air conditioning system, parking aid, mobile phone, instrument cluster, steering angle sender, ESC, vehicle voltage control unit, multifunction steering wheel
23	Interior lighting, storage compartment and luggage compartment, side lights
24	Central control unit
25	Seat heaters
26	Rear window wiper
27	Telephone preinstallation
28	Petrol engine: AKF valve, Diesel engine: Control flap
29	Injection, coolant pump
30	Fuel pump, ignition, Cruise control system, operation of PTC relay
31	Lambda probe

No.	Power consumer
32	High pressure fuel pump, pressure valve
33	Engine control unit
34	Engine control unit, vacuum pump
35	Power supply of ignition lock
36	Main beam
37	Rear fog light, DC/DC converter START-STOP
38	Fog lights
39	Air blower for heating
40-41	Not assigned
42	Rear window heater
43	Horn
44	Windscreen wipers
45	Central control unit for convenience system
46	Engine control unit, fuel pump
47	Cigarette lighter, power socket in the luggage compartment
48	ABS, START-STOP (DC/DC) converter ESP
49	Turn signal lights, brake lights
50	START-STOP (DC/DC) converter infotainment, radio
51	Electrical power window (front and rear) - left side
52	Electrical power window (front and rear) - right side
53	Parking light = left side, electrical sliding/tilting roof
54	START-STOP (instrument cluster), alarm
55	Control unit for an automatic gearbox
56	Headlight cleaning system, parking light - right side
57	Left low beam, headlight range adjustment
58	Low beam on the right

Fuses in the engine compartment

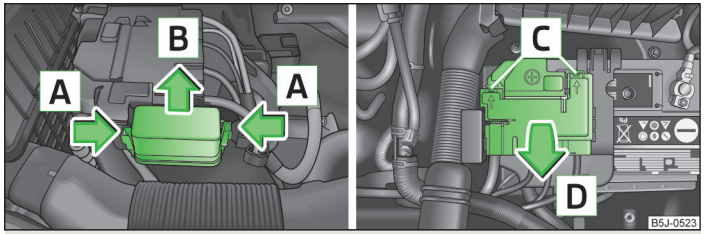

Fig. 154 **Vehicle battery: Distribution board cover.**

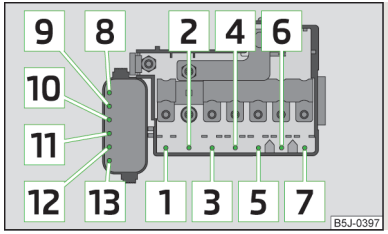

Fig. 155
Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

› Press together the circlips in the fuse box cover at the same time in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 154 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow B.
› Release the fixtures in the openings C using a flat screwdriver and fold the cover upwards in direction of arrow D.

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

No.	Power consumer
1	Generator
2	Not assigned
3	Interior
4	Electrical auxiliary heating system
5	Interior

No.	Power consumer
6	Glow plugs, radiator fan
7	Electro-hydraulic power steering
8	ABS or ASR or ESC
9	Radiator fan
10	Automatic gearbox
11	ABS or ASR or ESC
12	Central control unit
13	Electrical auxiliary heating system

Note

Fuses 1-7 are replaced by a specialist garage.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights 191
Changing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights) 191
Changing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights) 191
Changing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights) 192
Changing the front turn signal bulb 192
Changing the front parking light bulb 192
Fog lights and daytime running lights 192
Fog light, Roomster Scout 193
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 193
Tail light 194

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 156, *Engine compartment*.
- Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury. We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- When removing and installing the number plate light and tail light make sure that the paintwork of the vehicle and the tail light are not damaged.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main or low beam.
- Other LEDs must be replaced by a specialist garage.

Headlights

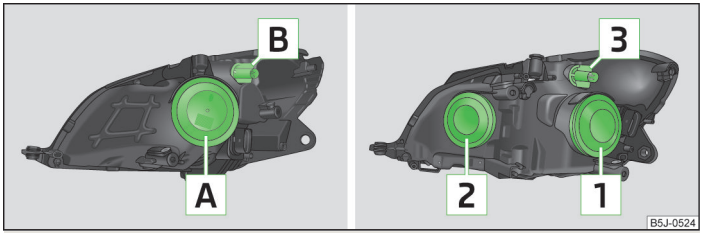

Fig. 156 **Bulb arrangement: Halogen headlights/halogen projector headlights**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Bulb arrangement in the Halogen headlamp

A - low beam, main beam and side lights

B - front turn signal light

Bulb arrangement in the Halogen projector headlights

1 - low beam light

2 - main beam and side lights

3 - front turn signal light

Changing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights)

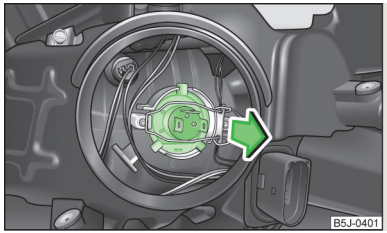

Fig. 157
Removing bulbs for low and main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

› Remove the rubber cover A » Fig. 156 on page 191.
› Remove the connector on the bulb, unlock the circlip, and remove the light bulb » Fig. 157.
› Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb socket fit in the recesses of the reflector.
› Lock the circlip and insert the connector in the bulb.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Changing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)

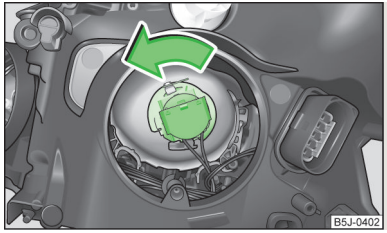

Fig. 158
Removing the bulb for the low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

› Remove the rubber cover 1 » Fig. 156 on page 191.

› Turn the connector with the bulb in **anti-clockwise** direction up to the stop » Fig. 158 and remove it.
› Replace the bulb, insert the connector with the new bulb and turn **clockwise** up to the stop.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Changing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)

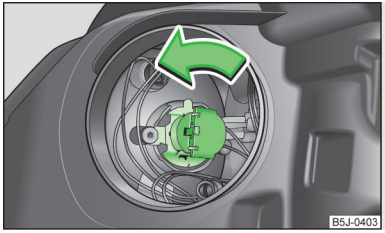

Fig. 159
Removing the bulb for the main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

› Remove the rubber cover 2 » Fig. 156 on page 191.
› Turn the connector with the bulb in **anti-clockwise** direction up to the stop » Fig. 159 and remove it.
› Replace the bulb, insert the connector with the new bulb and turn **clockwise** up to the stop.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Changing the front turn signal bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

› Remove the socket B » Fig. 156 on page 191 or the socket 3 up to the stop **in an anti-clockwise** direction and remove along with the bulb for the turn signal light.
› Replace the bulb, insert the socket with the new bulb and turn **clockwise** up to the stop.

Changing the front parking light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

› Remove the rubber cover A » Fig. 156 on page 191 and 2.
› Grasp the lamp holder and remove it from the bulb housing.
› Replace the light bulb and insert the lamp holder back into the headlamp with the bulb.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Fog lights and daytime running lights

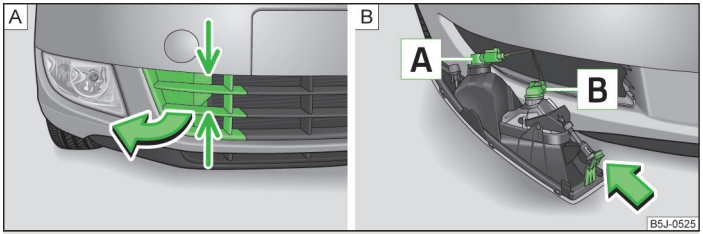

Fig. 160 **Front bumper: Protective grille/removing the fog light**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 160.

A - Bulb for daylight driving light

B - Light bulb for fog lights

Removing the cap

› Grasp the protective grille in the areas marked by the arrows » Fig. 160 - A and remove the cover.

Replacing light bulbs for fog lights/daytime running lights

› Insert your hand into the opening in the protective grille and press the catch » Fig. 160 - B in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the front fog lamp.

› Turn the connector with the bulb in **counter-clockwise** up to the stop and remove.
› Replace the lamp, insert the connector with the new bulb and turn **clockwise** up to the stop.
› To re-install the fog light, first of all place the fog light with the lug on the side opposite the licence plate.
› Press in the fog lamp on the side closest to the licence plate.
› Insert the cap, beginning with the lug on the side opposite the license plate.
› Press in the cap on the side facing the license plate. The cap must engage firmly.

Fog light, Roomster Scout

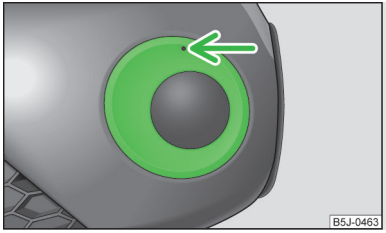

Fig. 161
Front bumper: Roomster Scout

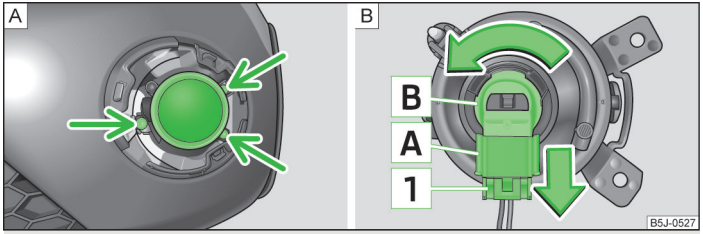

Fig. 162 **Front bumper: Fog lights/fog lights: Replacing the light bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Removing the cap and fog light
› Guide the wire clamp » Fig. 161 into the opening above the fog light » page 177, *Vehicle tool kit* and remove the cover.
› Use the screwdriver » page 177, *Vehicle tool kit* to remove the screws » Fig. 162 - A.
› Remove the front fog lamp.

Changing light bulbs and installing fog lights
› Press the locking button 1 » Fig. 162 of the plug A and remove the plug from the socket B.
› Turn the socket B with the bulb counter-clockwise **up to** the stop and remove.
› Replace the bulb, insert the socket with the new bulb and turn **clockwise** up to the stop.
› Insert the plug A into the socket B.
› Retighten the screws and insert the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

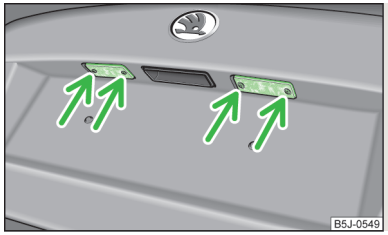

Fig. 163
Remove the licence plate light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

› Open the luggage compartment door and unscrew the glass cover » Fig. 163.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder and insert a new one.
› Replace the glass cover and push in until the stop. Make sure that you install the rubber seal in the right direction.
› Slightly screw the glass cover.

Tail light

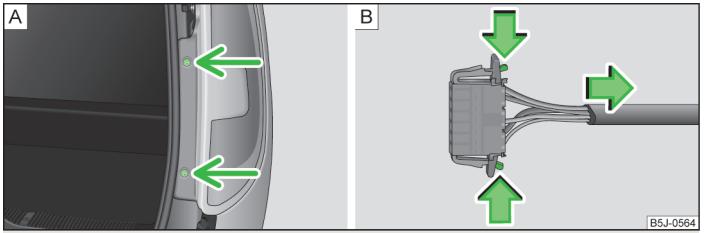

Fig. 164 **Removing the tail light assembly/disconnecting the plug connection**

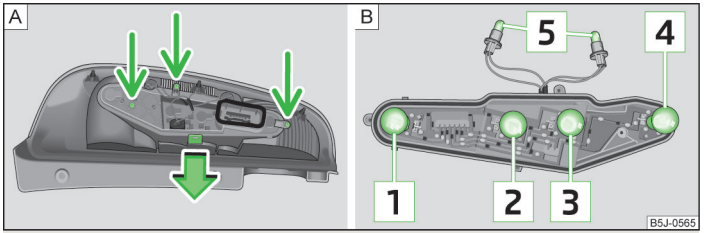

Fig. 165 **Remove the middle part of the light/bulb arrangement**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Bulb arrangement in the tail light assembly » Fig. 165

1 - Brake lights

2 - Turn signal lights

3 - Reversing light

4 - Rear fog light

5 - parking lights

Removing and installing the tail light

› Open the boot lid.
› Unscrew the light » Fig. 164 - A.
› Grip the light in the upper and lower area and move backwards somewhat.
› Disconnect plug connection » Fig. 164 - B.
› To access the bulbs, unscrew the middle of the light and press off the latching mechanism » Fig. 165 - A.
› To reinstall, screw the middle part of the light onto the housing of the rail light.
› Reconnect the plug connection and put the light into the original position.
› Screw the light into place

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly

› Remove the faulty bulb 1, 2, 3 or 4 » Fig. 165 from the holder and insert a new bulb.
› To replace the bulb, turn the bulb holder 5 **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove it from the housing.
› Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the housing and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data ____ 195
Dimensions ____ 197
Vehicle-specific details per engine type ____ 198

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

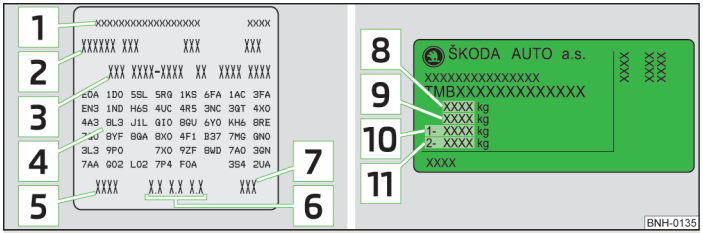

Fig. 166 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 195.

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 166 is located on the floor of the boot and is also stated in the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Operating weight (in kg)
6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
7 CO_2 emission levels - combined (in g/km)

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 166 is located on the lower part of the column between the front and rear doors on the front passenger's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number
The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Operating weight
The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » !.

The payload consists of the following components:
› Passengers
› All items of luggage and other loads
› Roof load including roof rack system
› Equipment not included in the operating weight
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

Measuring fuel consumption according to ECE standards and EU guidelines
The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

i Note

▪ If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
▪ Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

Dimensions

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 195.

Dimensions (mm)

	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK	SCOUT
Length	4214	4213	4240
Width	1684	1684	1695
Width including exterior mirror	1882	1882	1882
Height	1607	1607	1650
Clearance	140	140	141
Wheel base	2620	2620	2620
Track gauge front/rear	1436/1500 (1420/1484)[a)]	1436/1500 (1420/1484)[a)]	1427/1494

[a)] Valid for vehicles, which have factory-fitted 15" wheels.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 195.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./51 kW engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
51/5400	112/3000	3/1198

Performances	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Top speed (km/h)	159	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	15.9	
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	700[a]/ 900[b]	
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	600/450[c]	580/450[c]

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %
[c] Vehicles without ABS.

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
63/4800	160/1500-3500	4/1197

Performances	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Top speed (km/h)	172	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.6	
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1000[a]/ 1200[b]	
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	610/450[c]	590/450[c]

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %
[c] Vehicles without ABS.

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/5000	175/1500-4100	4/1197

Performances	ROOMSTER MG5	ROOMSTER DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	184	184
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.0
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100[a]/ 1200[b]	
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	610/450[c]	630/450[c]

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %
[c] Vehicles without ABS.

1.4 ltr./63 kW engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
63/5000	132/3800	4/1390

Performances	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Top speed (km/h)	171	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	13.0	
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	900[a]/ 1100[b]	
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	600/450[c]	580/450[c]

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %
[c] Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 ltr./77 kW engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/5600	153/3800	4/1598

Performances	ROOMSTER MG5	ROOMSTER AG6
Top speed (km/h)	183	180
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.3	12.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1000[a]/ 1200[b]	
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	610/450[c]	630/450[c]

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %
[c] Vehicles without ABS.

1.2 ltr./55 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
55/4200	180/2000	3/1199

Performances	ROOMSTER	ROOMSTER GreenLine	PRAKTIK
Top speed (km/h)	162	165	162
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	15.5	15.4	15.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1000[a]/ 1200[b]		
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	650/450[c]		630/450[c]

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %
[c] Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
66/4200	230/1500-2500	4/1598

Performances	ROOMSTER	PRAKTIK
Top speed (km/h)	171	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	13.3	
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200	
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	660/450[a)]	640/450[a)]

[a)] Vehicles without ABS.

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/4400	250/1500-2500	4/1598

Performances	
Top speed (km/h)	181
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200
Permissible trailer load, un-braked (kg)	660/450[a)]

[a)] Vehicles without ABS.

Index

A

Abroad
Driving abroad 108
Unleaded petrol 108
ABS 111
Warning light 21
Accessories 151
Adjusting
Exterior mirrors 48
Seat 51
Adjusting the seats 124
Aerial 144
See windows 147
Airbag 132
Deactivating 137
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 137
Deployment 132
Front airbag 134
Head airbag 136
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 152
Side airbag 135
Airbag system 132
Air conditioning
Operation 79
Air conditioning system
Air outlet vents 75
Climatronic 81
Manual air conditioning system 78
Alarm 32
Anti-theft alarm system 32
Operation 33
Trailer 122
Antilock Braking System 111
Armrest 69
Artificial leather 150
Ashtray 64
ASR 111
warning light 20
Assist systems
ABS 21, 111
ASR 20, 111
Cruise Control System 113
EDS 111
ESC 20, 110
Parking aid 112
START/STOP 114
Auto Check Control 16
Automatic gearbox 98
Dynamic shift programme 101
Emergency programme 102
Information for driving 99
Kickdown 101
Manual shifting of gears 100
Parking 99
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 102
Selector lever lock 101
Selector lever positions 99
Starting off 99
Stopping 99
Tiptronic 100
Automatic load deactivation 168
AUX-IN 91
Avoiding damage to the vehicle
Driving through water 108
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 107

B

Ball head
Check fitting 119
Fitting 118
Ready position 118
Removing 119
Belts 127
Belt tensioners 131
Bicycle carrier 61
Bonnet
Closing 158
Opening 158
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 56
Cover 58
Emergency unlocking 35
Fastening elements 56
Fixing nets 57
Folding hooks 57
see Boot lid 34
Unlocking the boot lid 35
Boot lid 34
Automatic locking 34
Brake assist 110
Brake booster 97
Brake fluid 163
Changing 164
Checking 164
Brakes
Brake fluid 164
Handbrake 97
Running in 103
Warning lights 18
Braking 96
Information on braking 96
Breakdown kit 181
Bulbs
In the tail light 194
Replacing 190
Button in the driver's door
Electrical power windows 35

C

Car computer
see Multifunction display 11
Car park ticket holder 66
Carrier 63
Cavity protection 148
Central locking button 30

Central locking system 28
lock 30
unlock 30
Changing
Brake fluid 164
Changing the bulb for fog light (Scout) 193
Engine oil 161
Fog lights and daytime running lights bulbs 192
Front parking light bulb 192
Front turn signal bulb 192
High beam bulb - halogen projector headlights 191, 192
Low beam and high beam bulb - halogen headlights 191
Changing a wheel
Follow-up work 179
Preliminary work 178
Remove and attaching a wheel 178
Changing the
wheels 177
Charging a vehicle battery 167
Check
Fit ball head properly 119
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 166
Brake fluid 164
Coolant 163
Engine oil 161
Oil level 161
Windscreen washer fluid 159
Children and safety 139
Child safety
Side airbag 140
Child safety lock 26
Child seat
Classification 141
ISOFIX 141
on the front passenger seat 140
TOP TETHER 143
Use of child seats 141
Use of ISOFIX child seats 142
Chrome parts
refer to Taking care of your vehicle 147
Cigarette lighter 65
Cleaning 144
Artificial leather 150
Covers of electrically heated seats 150
Fabric 150
Headlight lenses 147
Natural leather 149
Plastic parts 146
Wheels 148
Climatronic
automatic mode 82
Controlling blower 83
Controls 81
Defrosting windscreen 83
Recirculated air mode 82
Setting the temperature 82
Clock 11
Clothes hook 66
Cockpit
12-volt power outlet 65
Ashtray 64
Cigarette lighter 65
General view 7
Lighting 43
Storage compartments 66
Compartments 66
Computer
see Multifunction display 11
Coolant 162
Checking 163
Replenishing 163
warning light 19
Coolant temperature gauge
display 9
Correct seated position 124
Driver 125
Front passenger 125
Instructions 125
Rear seats 125
Counter for distance driven 10
Cruise Control System 113
Cupholders 64

D

Daytime running lights 39
Deactivating an airbag 137
Decorative films 147
Defrosting rear window 44
Delayed locking of the boot lid
see Boot lid 34
Diesel
refer to Fuel 155
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 155
Diesel particle filter 22
Digital clock 11
Dipstick 161
Display
Service interval 10
Distance driven 10
Door
Child safety lock 26
Closing 27
Opening 27
Doors
Emergency locking 28
Driving
Abroad 108
Driving through water on streets 108
Emissions 195
Fuel consumption 195
Maximum speed 198
Driving economically
Economical gear changing 104
Driving through water 108

E

Economical and environmentally friendly driving 103
Economical driving
Driving at full throttle 105
Looking ahead 104
Regular maintenance 105
EDS 111
Electrical power windows
Button in the driver's door 35, 36
Button in the rear door 36
Central locking system 37
Operational faults 37
Electronic Differential Lock 111
Electronic immobiliser 95
emergency
opening the loading door (Praktik) 73
Emergency
Automatic gearbox 102
Hazard warning light system 42
jump-starting 184
Jump-starting 183
locking of the doors 28
Selector lever-unlocking 102
Towing the vehicle 184
Tyre repair 181
Unlocking the boot lid 35
wheel changes 177
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 176
First aid kit 176
Jack 177
Vehicle tool kit 177
Warning triangle 176
Emissions 195
Engine
Running in 103
Starting and stopping the engine 93
Starting the engine 95
Stopping the engine 95
Engine compartment 156
Brake fluid 164
Coolant 162
Overview 158
Vehicle battery 164
Engine oil 159
Capacity 160
Changing 161
Checking 161
Replenishing 161
Specifications 160
warning light 19
Engine revolutions counter 9
Environment 103
Environmental compatibility 106
Environmentally friendly driving 103
ESC
Function 110
Warning light 20

F

Films 147
Fire extinguisher 176
First aid kit 176
Folding down the
seats 52
Footmats 98
Refer to Footmats 98
Front airbag 134
Front seats 50
Fuel 154
Diesel 155
Fuel gauge 9
gauge 9
refer to Fuel 154
Refuelling 154
Unleaded petrol 155
Fuel consumption 103
Fuses
Assignment 187
Colour coding 187
Replacing 187

G

Gear
Recommended gear 11
Gear changing
lever 97
General view
Cockpit 7
GSM 84

H

Handbrake 97
Head airbag 136
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 47
Headlights 191
Driving abroad 109
Headlight cleaning system 47
Headrest
Headrest 52
Head restraint 52
Heating 76
Deicing the windows 77
Exterior mirrors 48
Operation 77
Rear window 44
Recirculated air mode 78
Seats 51
Heating and air-conditioning 75
Hill hold control 110
Horn 7

I

Ignition 95

Ignition lock 95
Immobiliser 95
Individual settings
locking 29
unlocking 29
Inertia reels 130
Information display
see MAXI DOT 15
Instrument cluster 8
Interior monitor 33
Internal lighting
Praktik 73
Internal lights
Praktik 73
ISOFIX 141

J

Jack 177
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 180
Jump-starting 183, 184

L

lashings
Praktik 72
Lever
Main beam 40
Turn signal 40
Light
Headlight beam adjustment 39
Headlight flasher 40
Low beam 38
Main beam 40
Parking light 38
Replacing bulbs 190
turn signal 40
Lights
Cockpit 43
Daytime running lights 39
Fog lights 41
Foglights with the CORNER function 41
Halogen projector headlights with cornering light function 40
Hazard warning light system 42
Parking lights 42
Rear fog light 41
Switching on and off 38
Tourist lights 41
warning lights 17
Loads 195
Lock
Central locking system 30
Locking
Emergency locking 28
Remote control 31
without central locking 27
Locking and unlocking from the inside 30
Luggage compartment
Lighting 44
Variable loading floor 59
Luggage compartment lid 34

M

Maintenance
Decorative films 147
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 97
MAXI DOT 15
Main menu 15
Settings 15
Maximum speed 198
MDI 91
Mirror
Additional interior mirror 48
Exterior mirrors 48
Manually dimmed rear-view mirror 48
Vanity 45
Mobile phone 84
Connecting to the hands-free system 87
Modifications 151
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 152
Service 152
Spoiler 152
Multifunction display
Functions 11
Memory 12
Operation 13
Multimedia 90

N

Net partition 58

O

Oil
See Engine oil 161
Onboard computer
see Multifunction display 11
Operation in winter
Diesel fuel 155
Vehicle battery 167
Outside temperature 13
Overview
Engine compartment 158
warning lights 17

P

Paintwork
See Paintwork care 146
Paintwork care 146
Panoramic roof 45
Parking
Parking aid 112
Part replacement 151

Passive safety
Before setting off 123
Driving safety 124
Safety equipment 123
Passive Safety 123
Pedals 98
Footmats 98
Periodic wiping 46
Petrol
refer to Fuel 155
Polishing the paintwork
See Taking care of your vehicle 146
Power steering 94
Power window force limiter 36
praktik
adjusting the safety partition 73
Praktik 71
Adjustable safety partition behind the front seats 72
emergency release of the loading area door 73
Fastening the loading floor 72
Internal lighting 73
Internal lights 73
Pre-glow plug system - warning light 22

R

Radiator fan 159
Radio reception
See windows 147
Raise vehicle 180
Rear-view mirror
Exterior mirrors 48
Manually dimmed rear-view mirror 48
rear seats
in the longitudinal direction 53
Tilt the seat backrest 53
Rear seats 52
Rear Seats
fold back into the starting position 55
Rear window heating 44
Recirculated air mode
Manual air conditioning system 80
Recommended gear 11
Refuelling 154
Fuel 154
Regulation
Headlight beam 39
Remote control 31
Synchronisation process 32
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 26
Repairs and technical alterations 151
Replacing
Bulb for the licence plate light 193
Bulbs 190
Bulbs in the tail light 194
Fuses 187
Fuses in the dash panel 188
Fuses in the engine compartment 189
Vehicle battery 168
Windscreen wiper blades 47
Replenishing
Coolant 163
Engine oil 161
Windscreen washer fluid 159
Running-in
The first 1500 km 102
Running in
Brake pads 103
Engine 103
Tyres 103

S

Safe securing system 29
Safety 123
Child safety 139
Child safety seats 139
Correct seated position 124
Head restraints 52
ISOFIX 141
TOP TETHER 143
Safety belts
rear middle seat 130
Saving electrical energy 103
Seals
Taking care of your vehicle 146
Seat
Adjusting 51
Seat belt
warning light 18
Seat belt height adjuster 130
Seat belts 127
Belt tensioners 131
Cleaning 151
fastening and unfastening 129
Height adjustment 130
Inertia reels 130
The physical principle of a frontal collision 128
Seats
Head restraints 52
Heating 51
Removing seats 54
Seats and stowing 50
Selector lever
see selector lever positions 99
Selector lever positions 99
Service 152
Service display 10
Setting
Heating 77
Manual air conditioning system 80
Manually dimmed rear-view mirror 48
Steering wheel 94
Setting temperature
Heating 77
Setting the clock
Clock 11
Shifting gears
Driving and saving energy 104

Side airbag 135
Snow chains 175
Spare wheel 172
Speedometer 9
Speed symbol
Refer to Wheels 172
Spoiler 152
START/STOP
Function 114
Starting and stopping the engine 93
Starting engine
Jump-starting 183
Starting the engine 95
Jump-starting 184
START STOP
Jump-starting 184
Steering force assistance 94
Steering wheel 94
Stopping the engine 95
Storage 66
Storage compartment
Storage compartment on the driver's side 68
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 67
Storage Compartment
Lighting 44
Storage compartments 66
Flexible storage compartment 71
Storage compartment in the front centre console 69
storage pockets on the front seat 68
Stowage
compartment beneath the front seat 69
compartment for glasses 68
compartments in the doors 70
compartments in the luggage 71
sun roof 45
sunshade 45
Sun visors 45
Switching lights on and off 38

T

Taking care of the vehicle
Natural leather 149
Seat belts 151
Taking care of your vehicle 144
Artificial leather 150
Automatic car wash system 144
Cavity protection 148
Chrome parts 147
Cleaning the wheels 148
Decorative films 147
Door lock cylinders 148
Fabric 150
Headlight lenses 147
High-pressure cleaner 145
Plastic parts 146
Polishing the paintwork 146
Rubber seals 146
Taking care of the interior 149
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 145
Washing 144
Washing by hand 144
Wash system 144
Wax treatment 146
Taking care of your vehicles
Fabric covers 150
Technical data 195
Telephone 84
the rear seats
fold down seat backrest and fold seat fully forward 53
Tiptronic 98
see automatic gearbox 100
Tools 177
TOP TETHER 143
Towing 184
Towing a trailer 117
Towing device
Description 117
Drawbar load 117
Use and care 120
Towing eye
Front 185
Rear 186
Towing protection 33
Traction Control System (ASR) 111
Trailer 117, 120
Loading 120
Towing a trailer 121
Transport
Boot 55
Roof rack system 63
Transporting children safely 139
Trays
folding table in the middle back seat 70
Two-way radio systems 84
Type plate 195
Tyre load-bearing capacity
Refer to Wheels 171
Tyre pressure monitor 174
Tyre repair 181
Check pressure 183
Preparations 182
Sealing and inflating the tyre 182
Tyres 169
Inflation pressure 170
New 171
See Wheels 171
Sizes 170
Tyre wear indicator 170

U

Underbody protection 148
Unleaded petrol 108
unlock
Central locking system 30

Unlocking
Remote control 31
without central locking 27
Unlocking and locking 25
Useful equipment 63
12-volt power outlet 65
Ashtray 64
Car park ticket holder 66
Cigarette lighter 65
Clothes hood 66
Cupholders 64

V

Variable loading floor 59
Dividing the luggage compartment 59
Removing and refitting 60
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 168
Charging 167
Checking the electrolyte level 166
Cover 166
Disconnecting and reconnecting 167
Operation in winter 167
Replacing 168
Safety instructions 164
Vehicle Condition
see Auto Check Control 16
Vehicle data sticker 195
Vehicle dimensions 197
vehicle identification number - VIN 195
Vehicle key 25
Vehicle tool kit 177
Visors 45

W

Warning lights 17
Warning symbols
see warning lights 17
Warning triangle 176
Washing 144
Automatic car wash system 144
by hand 144
Chrome parts 147
High-pressure cleaner 145
Water
Driving through 108
Wax treatment
See Taking care of your vehicle 146
Weights 195
Wheel
changing 177
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolt 180
Caps 173
Loosening and tightening 179
Wheel rims 169
Wheels
Bolts 175
Full trim 173
General information 169
Load index 171
Replacing wheels 170
Service life of tyres 170
Snow chains 175
Spare wheel 172
Speed symbol 172
Storing wheels 170
Tyre pressure 170
Tyre sizes 170
Tyre wear indicator 170
Unidirectional tyres 172
Winter tyres 175
Wheels and tyres
Hubcaps 174
Window convenience operation 37
Windows 147
Deicing 147
See Electrical power windows 35
Window wipers
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 47
Windscreen
Deicing 147
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 159
Replenishing 159
Warning light 23
Winter 159
Windscreen washer system 159
Windscreen wash system
Windscreen washer 46
Windscreen wiper
Operate 46
Windscreen wipers
Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades 47
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 47
Windscreen washer fluid 159
Winter
Deicing windows 147
Winter operation 175
Snow chains 175
Winter tyres 175
Winter tyres
See Wheels 175

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or might only be offered in certain markets; information is provided by ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

› Navigation through the **list of content**
› Classical **reading page by page**
› **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
› **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Minimisation of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions
- Start-stop system*
- Recovery*
- Indication of recommended gear*

Weight reduction
- Optimisation of high-strength panels, reduction of thickness in panels and other materials
- Replacement of spare wheel with tyre repair kit

Reduction of energy consumption
- Use of energy-saving electromechanical steering instead of hydraulic type
- Optimisation of efficiency of generators
- Optimisation of operating consumption and electrical current consumption

Optimisation of aerodynamic- and rolling resistance
- Additional aerodynamic spoilers*
- Additional covers at rack (CD covers)*
- Optimised cooling (input grid, additional seal)*
- Reduction by 15 mm* with frame
- Ro-Wi tyres (wheels with low rolling resistance)*

Recyclability
- All models currently in production homologised in conformity with the requirements for recyclability (EU Directive 2005/64/EC)
- Use of recyclable, environmentally-friendly materials
- Use of recycled materials with the parameters of the new material preferred
- Labelling of materials for the purpose of making sorting easy



* realised in the GreenLine series

The green seal represents ŠKODA AUTO commitment to environmentally responsible behaviour. It expresses responsible engagement towards the environment and sustainable development.

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♻ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Roomster anglicky 05.2013
S80.5610.11.20
5J7 012 003 MQ